SIEMENS

SIMATIC NET

Industrial Ethernet switches SCALANCE XB-200/XP-200 Command Line Interface

Configuration Manual

Legal information

Warning notice system

This manual contains notices you have to observe in order to ensure your personal safety, as well as to prevent damage to property. The notices referring to your personal safety are highlighted in the manual by a safety alert symbol, notices referring only to property damage have no safety alert symbol. These notices shown below are graded according to the degree of danger.

> ⚠ **DANGER**
>
> indicates that death or severe personal injury **will** result if proper precautions are not taken.

> ⚠ **WARNING**
>
> indicates that death or severe personal injury **may** result if proper precautions are not taken.

> ⚠ **CAUTION**
>
> indicates that minor personal injury can result if proper precautions are not taken.

> **NOTICE**
>
> indicates that property damage can result if proper precautions are not taken.

If more than one degree of danger is present, the warning notice representing the highest degree of danger will be used. A notice warning of injury to persons with a safety alert symbol may also include a warning relating to property damage.

Qualified Personnel

The product/system described in this documentation may be operated only by **personnel qualified** for the specific task in accordance with the relevant documentation, in particular its warning notices and safety instructions. Qualified personnel are those who, based on their training and experience, are capable of identifying risks and avoiding potential hazards when working with these products/systems.

Proper use of Siemens products

Note the following:

> ⚠ **WARNING**
>
> Siemens products may only be used for the applications described in the catalog and in the relevant technical documentation. If products and components from other manufacturers are used, these must be recommended or approved by Siemens. Proper transport, storage, installation, assembly, commissioning, operation and maintenance are required to ensure that the products operate safely and without any problems. The permissible ambient conditions must be complied with. The information in the relevant documentation must be observed.

Trademarks

All names identified by ® are registered trademarks of Siemens AG. The remaining trademarks in this publication may be trademarks whose use by third parties for their own purposes could violate the rights of the owner.

Disclaimer of Liability

We have reviewed the contents of this publication to ensure consistency with the hardware and software described. Since variance cannot be precluded entirely, we cannot guarantee full consistency. However, the information in this publication is reviewed regularly and any necessary corrections are included in subsequent editions.

Table of contents

Introduction

<div style="text-align: right; font-size: 2em;">1</div>

Validity of this configuration manual

This Configuration Manual covers the following products:

- SCALANCE XB-200
- SCALANCE XP-200

Below, the products are also called IE switch, device or network component.

There are two variants of some devices with different article numbers. The two variants differ only in their factory settings. All other properties are identical.

This Configuration Manual applies to the following software version:

- SCALANCE XB-200 firmware as of version 2.0
- SCALANCE XP-200 firmware as of version 2.0

Factory settings

PROFINET variants

- Industrial Ethernet protocol: PROFINET
- Base bridge mode: 802.1D transparent bridge
- Redundancy mechanism: Ring redundancy
- Trust mode: Trust COS

EtherNet/IP variants

- Industrial Ethernet protocol: EtherNet/IP
- Base bridge mode: 802.1Q VLAN Bridge
- Redundancy mechanism: RSTP
- Trust mode: Trust COS-DSCP

Purpose of the Configuration Manual

This Configuration Manual is intended to provide you with the information you require to install, commission and operate IE switches. It provides you with the information you require to configure the IE switches.

Orientation in the documentation

Apart from the configuration manual you are currently reading, the products also have the following documentation:

- Configuration manual "SCALANCE XB-200/XP-200 Web Based Management""

  This document is intended to provide you with the information you require to commission and configure SCALANCE XB-200 and SCALANCE XP-200 IE switches using the Web Based Management.

- Operating Instructions "SCALANCE XB-200" and "SCALANCE XP-200"

  These documents contain information on installing, connecting up and approvals for the products.

You will find the documentation here:

- On the data medium that ships with some products:
  - Product CD / product DVD
  - SIMATIC NET Manual Collection

- On the Internet pages of Siemens Industry Online Support at.
  - SCALANCE XB-200 (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/ps/15291/man)
  - SCALANCE XP-200 (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/ps/21869/man)

Further documentation

In the system manuals "Industrial Ethernet / PROFINET Industrial Ethernet" and "Industrial Ethernet / PROFINET passive network components", you will find information on other SIMATIC NET products that you can operate along with the devices of this product line in an Industrial Ethernet network.

There, you will find among other things optical performance data of the communications partner that you require for the installation.

You will find the system manuals here:

- On the data medium that ships with some products:
  - Product CD / product DVD
  - SIMATIC NET Manual Collection

- On the Internet pages of Siemens Industry Online Support under the following entry IDs:
  - 27069465 (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/27069465)
    Industrial Ethernet / PROFINET Industrial Ethernet System Manual
  - 84922825 (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/84922825)
    Industrial Ethernet / PROFINET - Passive network components System Manual

SIMATIC NET manuals

You will find the SIMATIC NET manuals here:

- On the data medium that ships with some products:
  - Product CD / product DVD
  - SIMATIC NET Manual Collection
- On the Internet pages of Siemens Industry Online Support.

See also

Siemens Industry online support (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en)

Link to the area "Industrial Communication"
(http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/10805878/130000)

SIMATIC NET glossary

Explanations of many of the specialist terms used in this documentation can be found in the SIMATIC NET glossary.

You will find the SIMATIC NET glossary here:

- SIMATIC NET Manual Collection or product DVD

  The DVD ships with certain SIMATIC NET products.

- On the Internet under the following address:

  50305045 (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/50305045)

Security information

Siemens provides products and solutions with industrial security functions that support the secure operation of plants, solutions, machines, equipment and/or networks. They are important components in a holistic industrial security concept. With this in mind, Siemens' products and solutions undergo continuous development. Siemens recommends strongly that you regularly check for product updates.

For the secure operation of Siemens products and solutions, it is necessary to take suitable preventive action (e.g. cell protection concept) and integrate each component into a holistic, state-of-the-art industrial security concept. Third-party products that may be in use should also be considered. For more information about industrial security, visit http://www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity.

To stay informed about product updates as they occur, sign up for a product-specific newsletter. For more information, visit http://support.automation.siemens.com.

License conditions

Note

Open source software

Read the license conditions for open source software carefully before using the product.

You can download the license conditions in the WBM on the "System > Load&Save > Copyright" page.

Trademarks

The following and possibly other names not identified by the registered trademark sign ® are registered trademarks of Siemens AG:

SIMATIC NET, SCALANCE, C-PLUG, OLM

Firmware

The firmware is signed and encrypted. This ensures that only firmware created by Siemens can be downloaded to the device.

General information

2

2.1 System functions hardware equipment

Availability of the system functions

The following table shows the availability of the system functions on the IE switches. Note that all functions are described in this configuration manual and in the online help. Depending on your IE switch, some functions are not available.

We reserve the right to make technical changes.

		SCALANCE XB-200	SCALANCE XP-200
Information	ARP table	✓	✓
	Log table	✓	✓
	Ethernet Statistics	✓	✓
	Diagnostics (temperature)	-	✓
System	SMTP client	✓	✓
	DHCP client	✓	✓
	DHCP server	✓ (restricted)	✓
	SNMP	✓	✓
	Manual time setting	✓	✓
	DST	-	✓
	SNTP	✓	✓
	NTP	✓	✓
	SIMATIC Time Client	✓	✓
	Auto logout	✓	✓
	Syslog Client	✓	✓
	Fault monitoring	✓	✓
	PNIO	✓	✓
	EtherNet/IP	✓	✓
	PLUG	-	✓
	Power over Ethernet	-	✓ ("PoE" identifier in device names)
	Cable tester	✓	✓
Layer 2	Sending priorities	-	✓
	CoS assignment	✓	✓
	DSCP assignment	✓	✓
	QoS prioritization	✓	✓
	CoS port reassignment	-	✓
	Load control	✓	✓
	GVRP	-	✓

		SCALANCE XB-200	SCALANCE XP-200
	Port-based VLAN	✓	✓
	Switch port VLAN trunk	-	✓
	Port-based mirroring	✓	✓
	Dynamic MAC aging	✓	✓
	Ring redundancy	✓	✓
	Standby	✓	✓
	Observer	-	✓
	Spanning Tree	✓	✓
	RSTP	✓	✓
	MSTP	-	✓
	Enhanced Passive Listening Compatibility	✓	✓
	Loop detection	✓	✓
	Link aggregation	-	✓
	DCP forwarding	✓	✓
	LLDP	✓	✓
	Unicast filter	✓	✓
	Locked ports	✓	✓
	Unicast learning	✓	✓
	Unicast blocking	✓	✓
	Multicast groups	✓	✓
	IGMP	✓	✓
	GMRP	-	✓
	Multicast blocking	✓	✓
	Broadcast blocking	✓	✓
	RMON	✓	✓
	RMON history	-	✓
Layer 3	DHCP relay agent	✓	✓
Security	Passwords	✓	✓
	RADIUS authentication	✓	✓
	MAC authentication	-	✓
	Guest VLAN	-	✓
	802.1X reauthentication	✓	✓
	Management ACL	✓	✓

Availability of hardware

The following table shows the hardware of the IE switches.

We reserve the right to make technical changes.

	SCALANCE XB-200	SCALANCE XP-200
C-PLUG	-	✓
SELECT/SET button	-	✓
RESET button	✓	✓
Signaling contact	-	✓
Serial interface	✓	✓
Display modes	-	✓

2.2 Configuration limits

Configuration limits of the device

The following table lists the configuration limits for Web Based Management and the Command Line Interface of the device.

Depending on your IE switch, some functions are not available.

	Configurable function	Maximum number	
		SCALANCE XB-200	SCALANCE XP-200
System	Maximum frame size (ingress)	1632 bytes	
	Syslog server	3	
	E-mail server	3	
	DHCP pools	16 [1]	24
	IPv4 addresses per DHCP pool	1	24
	IPv4 addresses managed by the DHCP server (dynamic + static)	16 [1]	576
	DHCP static assignments per DHCP pool	-	24
	SNMP trap recipient	10	
	SNTP server	1	
	NTP server	1	
	Agent/TIA interfaces [2]	1	
Layer 2	Virtual LANs (port-based, including VLAN 1)	17	257
	Mirroring sessions	1	
	Multiple Spanning Tree instances	-	4
	Link aggregations or Etherchannels each with a maximum of 8 ports per aggregation	-	8
	Ports in a link aggregation	-	8
	Unicast filtering	128	

	Configurable function	Maximum number	
		SCALANCE XB-200	SCALANCE XP-200
	Multicast addresses without active GMRP	256	512
	Multicast addresses with activated GMRP	-	50
	Static MAC addresses in the FDB (Forward Database)	128	
Layer 3	DHCP Relay Agent interfaces	1	
	DHCP Relay Agent server	4	
Security	IP addresses from RADIUS servers	4	
	Management ACLs (access rules for management)	10	

[1] With the SCALANCE XB-200, the number of DHCP pools and manageable IPv4 addresses depends on the number of ports. The number of ports corresponds to the maximum number of DHCP pools and manageable IPv4 addresses.

[2] This is an IP interface.

2.3   Features not supported

The following features are not supported by the IE switches SCALANCE XB-200 and SCALANCE XP-200 with firmware version 2.0:

- FMP

- FQDN

- IPv6

- Layer 3 features

- Loopback

Even if these features are listed as parameters in the documentation and are displayed with the help functions `help` and `?`, you cannot execute them with a SCALANCE XB-200 and SCALANCE XP-200.

2.4 Working with the Command Line Interface (CLI)

Introduction

All the configuration settings for the device can be made using the Command Line Interface (CLI). The CLI therefore provides the same options as Web Based Management (WBM). You should read the detailed explanations of the parameters in the relevant configuration manual "Web Based Management". The CLI allows remote configuration over Telnet.

Note

Use with Windows 7

If you want to access the Command Line Interface in Windows 7, make sure that the functions required for this are enabled in Windows 7.

Starting the CLI in a Windows console

Follow the steps outlined below to start the Command Line Interface in a Windows console:

1. Open a Windows console and type in the command "telnet" followed by the IP address of the device you are configuring:

   ```
   C:\>telnet <IP address>
   ```

2. Enter your login and password.

As an alternative, you can also enter the command "telnet" followed by the IP address of the device you are configuring in the Start > Run menu.

Note

Requirement for use of the CLI

You should only use the command line interface if you are an experienced user.

Even commands that bring about fundamental changes to the configuration are executed without a prompt for confirmation.

Errors in the configuration can mean that no further operation is possible in the entire network.

Note

Command sets depend on the logged-on user. Changing configuration data is possible only with the "admin" role.

2.5 Structure of the Command Line Interface

Grouping of the commands in the various modes

The commands of the Command Line Interface are grouped according to various modes. Apart from a few exceptions (`help`, `exit`), commands can only be called up in the mode to which they are assigned. This grouping allows different levels of access rights for each individual group of commands. The following graphic is an overview of the available modes.

```
┌──────────────────────────────┬──────────────────────────────┐
│                              │                              │
│       User EXEC Mode         │     Privileged EXEC Mode     │
│                              │                              │
│                              │                      │       │
└──────────────────────────────┴──────────────────────▼───────┘
┌────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│            Global Configuration Mode                        │
└────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
      │                                  │
      ├──► Interface Configuration       ├──► AUTOLEARN
      │                                  │
      ├──► VLAN                          ├──► Events
      │                                  │
      ├──► QOS                           ├──► LOADSAVE
      │                                  │
      ├──► NTP                           └──► Redundancy
      │
      └──► SNTP
```
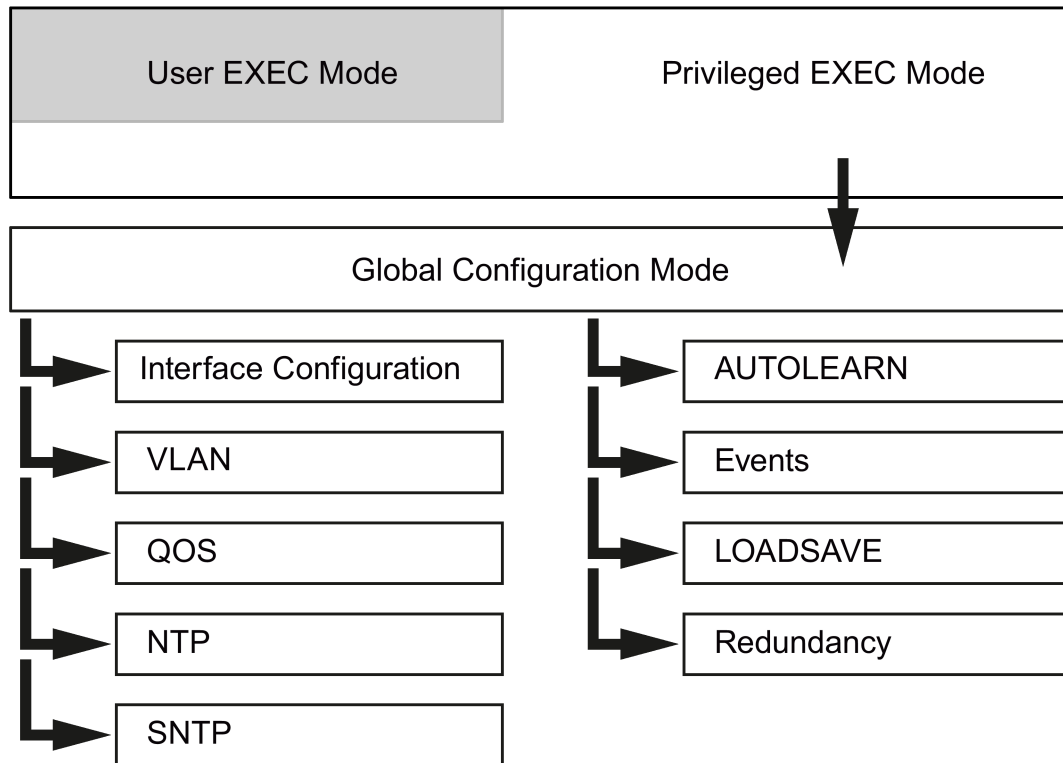
User EXEC mode

This mode is active after you log in with the user name `user` in a console window. In this mode, you can use `show` commands to display the current values of configuration parameters. It is not possible to modify parameters in this mode.

To be able to modify configuration parameters, you need to change to the Privileged EXEC mode.

Privileged EXEC mode

You change to this mode if you log in with the name "admin" or enter the command `enable` in User EXEC mode. There are two ways of exiting the Privileged EXEC mode:

1. The `exit` command logs you out; the Login Prompt prompt appears.

2. The `disable` command brings you back one level from the Privileged EXEC mode to the User EXEC mode. (The `disable` command is not available in the User EXEC mode.)

Global configuration mode

In this mode, you can make basic configuration settings. In addition to this, you can also call up modes for the configuration of special interfaces or functions, for example to configure a VLAN. You change to this mode by entering `configure terminal` in the Privileged EXEC mode. To exit this mode, enter `end`.

Other configuration modes

From the Global configuration mode, you can change to other configuration modes for special tasks. These are either general configuration modes (for example line configuration, interface configuration) or protocol-specific configuration modes (SNTP, NTP).

2.6 The CLI command prompt

Overview

The Command Line Interface prompt shows the following information:

● The mode in which the CLI is currently operating.
  Most commands can only be called in a particular mode. You should therefore check the CLI mode based on the command prompt.

  – User Exec mode: `CLI>`

  – Privileged Exec mode and configuration modes: `CLI(...)#`

● The selected interface when the CLI is in an Interface Configuration mode.
  In the Interface Configuration mode, the parameters are configured for one specific interface. The command prompt is displayed in the form `CLI(config-if-$$$)#` where the placeholder `$$$` is replaced by the identifier of the Interface. You select the Interface by setting suitable parameters for the `interface` command.

● An identifier when the Trial mode is enabled.
  If you first test changes to the configuration and then want to discard them, disable the Auto save function with the `no auto-save` command. You are then in Trial mode.
  Changes to the configuration that you have not saved are indicated by an asterisk in front of the command prompt: `*CLI(...)#`.
  You save the changes to the configuration with the command `write startup-config`. With the `auto-save` command, you enable the Auto save function again.

Note

Upper and lower case

The Command Line Interface does not distinguish between upper case and lower case letters.

Make sure, however, that names used by the operating system or other programs are correctly written.

Blank

To use blanks in a text, enter the text in quotes, for example "H e l l o"

2.7 Symbols of the CLI commands

Symbols for representing CLI commands

When setting parameters for CLI commands, the following characters are used:

Charac-ter	Meaning	
< ... >	mandatory parameter	Instead of the expression in parenthesis, you must enter a value
[...]	optional parameter	Instead of the expression in parenthesis, you can enter a value
(...)	Value or range of values	Enter a value to replace the expression in parenthesis
(... - ...)	Range of values	Enter a value from this range
{ ... }	Selection list	Select one more elements from the list
{ ...	... }	exclusive selection	Select exactly one element from this list

These characters are used in combinations to describe mandatory and optional entries.

There is a general description of some of these combinations below:

Character combinations	Meaning
< variable >	Instead of the expression in parentheses<>, enter a permitted value
< variable (a - b) >	Instead of the expression in parentheses <>, enter a value from the range "a" to "b"
[< variable 1 >< variable 2 >]	The parameter pair is optional. If you use the parameter assignment, you need to enter a permitted value to replace both expressions in parenthesis <>
[keyword < variable (a - b)>]	The parameter assignment is optional. If you use the keyword, you need to enter a value from the range "a" to "b" to replace the expression in parenthesis <>
[keyword < variable (a - b) unit >]	The parameter assignment is optional. If you use the keyword, you need to enter a value from the range "a" to "b" to replace the expression in parenthesis <>. "Unit" is one of the variables and is also replaced by the entry.
[keyword { A	B	C }]	The parameter assignment is optional. If you use the keyword, you need to specify exactly one of the values "A", "B" or "C"
keyword { [A] [B] [C] }	After the keyword, enter one or more of the values "A", "B" or "C"

2.8 Addresses and interface names

2.8.1 Naming interfaces

Addressing interfaces

The devices have several types of interface that are addressed in different ways.

Addressing physical interfaces

The following notation applies to all commands that address a physical interface:

- Enter the command "`interface`".

- Specify the interface type `<interface-type>`.

- After a space, enter the interface identifier,
  `<interface-id>`.

  The interface identifier is made up of the module number and the port number separated by a slash.

You call a Fast Ethernet interface on the second port of module 0 with the following command: `interface fa 0/2`

Addressing logical interfaces

The following notation applies to all commands that address a logical interface:

- Enter the command "`interface`".

- Enter the keyword for the logical interface.

  - `port-channel` (abbreviation: `po`)

  - `vlan`

- After a space, enter the number of the interface you assigned when you created it.

  - `<port-channel-id(1-8)>`

  - `<vlan-id(1-4094)>`

You call port channels as follows: `interface po 2`

You call VLAN ports as follows: `interface vlan 1`

Available physical interfaces

Available interface types

SCALANCE XB-200 support the following interface types:

interface-type	Abbreviation/acronym
fast-ethernet	fa

SCALANCE XP-200 switches support the following interface types:

interface-type	Abbreviation/acronym
fast-ethernet	fa
gigabitethernet	gi

Available interface identifiers

All physical interfaces of the devices are called module 0.

Available logical interfaces

- VLAN

  To be able to use a VLAN, create it with the `vlan` command.

- Aggregated links, aggregated ports, port channel, Etherchannel

  These terms are used for the same function:
  Several ports or connections between two devices are logically bundled together (aggregated) to achieve a higher data transmission rate and a lower failure risk.

  To add an interface to an Etherchannel, use the "`channel-group`" command.

Identification of the interfaces in the command prompt of the Interface configuration mode

To configure the interface use the command `interface` in the global configuration mode.

Since you configure precisely one of the existing interfaces in the Interface configuration mode, the command prompt shows not only the mode but also the name of this interface.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

The placeholder `$$$` is replaced by the following name of the interface:

Type of interface	Command prompt
fast-ethernet	cli(config-if-Fa0-$) #
gigabitethernet	cli(config-if-Gi$-$)#
vlan	cli(config-if-vlan-$)#
port-channel	cli(config-if-po-$)#

The placeholders `$` or `$-$` denote the numbering of the interface.

2.8.2   Address types, address ranges and address masks

Overview

Since the various types of addresses can be represented by different notations, the notations used in the Command Line Interface are shown below:

- IPv4 addresses
  Addresses for the Internet Protocol version 4 are written in the decimal notation of four numbers from the range 0 to 255, separated by a period.

  #### Note

  With leading zeros, the numbers are interpreted as octal numbers, e.g.: 192.168.070.071 → 192.168.56.57.

- Network masks
  A network mask is a series of bits that describes the network part of an IP address.
  The notation is normally decimal in keeping with the IP address.

- Alternative notation for network masks
  In contrast to the notation described above, network masks can also be represented as a number of 1 bits. The mask of the decimal representation 255.255.0.0 is then written as /16.
  The syntax is then for example: <ipaddress> / 16
  Note that there must be a space before and after the "/".

- MAC addresses
  In the syntax of the Command Line Interface, a MAC address is represented as a sequence of 6 bytes in hexadecimal format, in each case separated by a colon.
  The syntax is then, for example aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa

- Multicast addresses
  Layer 2 multicast addresses as used on this device use the notation of MAC addresses. For permitted address ranges, check the rules or ask your network administrator.

2.9   General CLI commands

This section describes commands that you can call up in any mode.

2.9.1   clear screen

Description

With this command, you clear the screen.

The command prompt is displayed.

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
clear screen
```

Result

The screen is cleared.

The command prompt is displayed.

2.9.2   end

Description

With this command, you exit the configuration mode and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode.

Requirement

You are in a configuration mode.

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
end
```

Result

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

2.9.3   exit

Description

With this command, you close the current mode.

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
exit
```

Result

The current mode was exited. You are then at the next higher level.

If you are in Privileged EXEC Modus or in User EXEC Modus mode, you will be logged out.

2.9.4 Help functions and supported input

The Command Line Interface provides various functions that are helpful when making entries in the command line:

- `help`

- ?

- Command completion with the tab key

- Automatic completion of incomplete commands

- Paging in the list of most recently used commands

- Display of the list of most recently used commands (`show history`)

2.9.4.1 help

Description

With this command, you display the help entry for a command or the command list.

Syntax

Call up help with the following parameters:

`help [command]`

Here, you replace `[command]` with the command for which you require help.

If the command for which you require help consists of several words, enter these words without spaces.

Result

The syntax of the command is displayed.

Syntax

If you call up help without parameters, you will obtain a list of all permitted commands in the current mode:

`help`

Result

The mode-specific as well as the global commands are displayed.

Note

Incomplete command names

If you have specified an incomplete command when calling help, a list of all commands that start with the term you have entered is created.

2.9.4.2 The command "?"

Description

With this command, you call up the command list.

Syntax

Enter a question mark to obtain a list of all permitted commands in the current mode:

`?`

For this command, you do not need to press the enter key. The command executes immediately after you type the character.

Result

The mode-specific as well as the global commands are displayed.

Note

Incomplete command names

If you have specified an incomplete command when calling the help function, a list of all commands that start with the term you have entered is created.

Note

Output in pages

With long lists, the results are displayed as pages. If `-- more --` appears at the lower edge of the display, you can move to the next page with the spacebar. If the display is in pages, you cannot page back. You exit the page display with the `q` key.

2.9.4.3 Completion of command entries

Description

The command interpreter of the Command Line Interface supports you when you enter commands.

As soon as the first characters of the command have been entered in the input line, the system can complete the entry as long as the character string is unambiguous.

This can be repeated after entering further characters.

Procedure

Enter the first characters of the command.

Press the tab key.

Result

The command interpreter completes the input as long as the command is unambiguous.

If you enter a character string that cannot be completed to form a command, an error message is displayed.

- The command is not unique: `% Ambiguous Command`
- The command is unknown: `% Invalid Command`
- The command is incomplete: `% Incomplete command`

If the entry is not yet complete, enter further characters.

With `?`, you obtain a list of the possible commands.

Repeat this if necessary until the command is complete and can execute.

2.9.4.4 Abbreviated notation of commands

Description

The command interpreter of the Command Line Interface also detects commands if only the first character of the command or its parts is entered.

This is only possible if all the parts of the abbreviated input can be assigned to exactly one command or to the parts of the command.

Example

The `show event config` command can be replaced by the expression `sh e c`.

2.9.4.5 Reusing the last used commands

Description

The Command Line Interface saves the last 14 commands used in a list assigned to the particular mode. This can then only be called up in the relevant mode.

Example:
In the Global Configuration mode, all entered commands are saved. If you entered commands earlier in the Interface Configuration mode, these commands are not included in the list of the Global Configuration mode. You can only call up and reuse these commands in the Interface Configuration mode.

Procedure

You can page through the list of the commands most recently used using the arrow up and arrow down keys.

If the command you are looking for is displayed, you can edit the command line as required and execute the command with the enter key.

Further notes

You display the list of commands last used with the `show history` command. This function is available in every mode.

2.9.4.6 Working through a command sequence

Separators for multiple commands in one line

You can call up several commands one after the other in one line in the CLI.

Separate the commands with a semicolon (;).

After completing your input, start the processing of this command sequence with the enter key.

Example

The command sequence
```
CLI#conf t; int vlan 1; no ip address dhcp; ip address 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0;
end; write startup
```

has the same effect as:
```
CLI#conf t
CLI(config)#int vlan 1
CLI(config-if-vlan-1)#no ip address dhcp
CLI(config-if-vlan-1)#ip address 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0
CLI(config-if-vlan-1)#end
CLI#write startup
```

2.9.4.7   The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

show history

Description

This command shows the last 14 commands you entered.

The commands are listed in the order in which they were called up. The `show history` command is listed as the last command to be entered.

The list depends on the mode. In the Global configuration mode, the last 14 commands entered in this mode are displayed. These commands are not included in the list of the Interface configuration mode.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show history`

Result

The list of used commands is displayed.

2.9.4.8   clear history

Description

This command deletes the last commands you entered.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
clear history
```

Result

The last commands to be input are deleted.

You display a list of the last 14 commands entered with the `show history` command.

Configuration

<div style="text-align: right; font-size: 3em;">3</div>

The following is described in this section:

- System settings
- Saving and loading configurations and firmware

3.1 System

This section describes commands with which general system properties can be displayed and configured.

3.1.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

3.1.1.1 show cli-console-timeout

Description

This command shows the global configuration for the timeout of the CLI console.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show cli-console-timeout
```

Result

The configuration for the timeout is displayed.

3.1.1.2 show coordinates

Description

This command shows the system coordinates.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` **or** `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show coordinates
```

Result

The system coordinates are displayed.

3.1.1.3 show device information

Description

This command shows information about the device.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` **or** `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show device information
```

Result

The information about the device is displayed.

3.1.1.4   show env temperature

Description

This command shows the temperature of the system.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show env temperature`

Result

The temperature of the system is displayed.

3.1.1.5   show environmental temperature

Description

This command shows the temperature values of internal and external modules of the device. The modules are only shown if they make temperature information available.

If the temperature value falls below or exceeds the displayed threshold values, the status changes accordingly. With the `event config` command, you can configure that you are informed of the status change by a message.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show environmental temperature`

Result

       The temperature values are displayed.

3.1.1.6   show ethernetip

Description

       This command shows the current EtherNet/IP configuration.

Requirement

       You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

       The command prompt is as follows:

       `cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

       Call the command without parameters:

       `show ethernetip`

Result

       The current EtherNet/IP configuration is displayed.

3.1.1.7   show hardware

Description

       This command shows the type and number as well as the position of the installed interface cards of the system.

Requirement

       You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

       The command prompt is as follows:

       `cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

       Call the command without parameters:

       `show hardware`

Result

The table of interface cards is displayed.

The slot ID, the status and the type or name of the card is listed.

Note

With SCALANCE XB-200 and SCALANCE XP-200 the slot ID is always 0. The table therefore always shows precisely one row.

3.1.1.8 show im

Description

This command shows information on device-specific vendor and maintenance data such as the article number, serial number, version numbers etc.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show im`

Result

The information is displayed.

3.1.1.9 show interface mtu

Description

With this command, you show the setting for the Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) of the outgoing management frames (egress).

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show interface mtu [{vlan<vlan-id(1-4094)>|
                     port-channel<port-channel-id(1-8)>|
                     <interface-type><interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`port-channel`	Keyword for a port channel connection	-
`port-channel-id`	Number of the addressed port channel	1 … 8
`interface-type`	Type of interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If no parameters are specified, the settings for all interfaces are displayed.

Result

The settings for the MTU of the outgoing management frames are displayed.

3.1.1.10   show interfaces

Description

This command shows the status and the configuration of one, several or all interfaces.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show interfaces
  [{
    [<interface-type><interface-id>]
    [{description|stormcontrol|flowcontrol|status}]
   |
    {vlan<vlan-id(1-4094)>}
```

```
          |
    port-channel<port-channel-id(1-8)>
  }]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
description	Shows the description of the interface	-
stormcontrol	Shows the storm control settings	-
flowcontrol	Shows the flow control settings	-
status	Shows the status of the interface	-
vlan	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
vlan-id	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
port-channel	Keyword for a port channel connection	-
port-channel-id	Number of the addressed port channel	1 ... 8

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the status and configuration of all available interfaces will be displayed.

Result

The status and the configuration of the selected interfaces are displayed.

3.1.1.11   show interfaces ... counters

Description

This command shows the counters of one, several or all interfaces.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` **or** `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show interfaces
   [{<interface-type><interface-id>]|{vlan<vlan-id(1-4094)>}]counters
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

For information on identifiers of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available counters.

Result

The counters of the selected interfaces are displayed.

3.1.1.12 show ip interface

show ip interface

Description

This command shows the configuration of one, several or all IP interfaces.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

This`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show ip interface
    [{
    Vlan <vlan-id(1-4094)> |
    <interface-type> <interface-id> |
    loopback
}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`Vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`loopback`	Loopback	-

For information on identifiers of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the configuration is displayed for all available IP interfaces.

Result

The configuration of the selected IP interface is displayed.

3.1.1.13 show pnio

Description

This command shows the current PROFINET configuration.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

This`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show pnio`

Result

The current PROFINET configuration is displayed.

3.1.1.14 show lldp neighbors

Description

This command shows the current content of the neighborhood table.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

`show lldp neighbors`

Result

The neighborhood table is displayed.

3.1.1.15 show lldp status

Description

This command shows per port whether LLDP frames are sent or received.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show lldp status [port {<interface-type> <interface-id>}]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`port`	Keyword for a port description.	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on identifiers of interfaces and addresses, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The information is displayed.

3.1.1.16 show broadcast-block config

Description

This command shows the broadcast blocking settings for ports.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show broadcast-block config [port <interface-type> <interface-id)>]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`port`	Keyword for a port description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The broadcast blocking settings for ports are displayed.

3.1.1.17 show unicast-block config

Description

This command shows the unicast blocking settings for ports.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show unicast-block config [port <interface-type> <interface-id)>]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`port`	Keyword for a port description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of interfaces and addresses, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The unicast blocking settings for ports are displayed.

3.1.1.18   show multicast-block config

Description

This command shows the multicast blocking settings for ports.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show multicast-block config [port <interface-type> <interface-id)>]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`port`	Keyword for a port description	-
`interface-type`	Type of interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If no parameters are specified, the settings for all ports are displayed.

Result

The multicast blocking settings for ports are displayed.

3.1.1.19 show versions

Description

This command shows the version information of the entire system.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show versions
```

Result

The version information of the entire system is displayed.

3.1.2 clear counters

Description

With this command, you reset the counters of an interface.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
clear counters [<interface-type><interface-id>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Specify a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on identifiers of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If no parameters are specified, the counters for all interfaces are reset.

Result

The counters of the interface are reset.

Further notes

You can display the statistical information of the interfaces with the `show interfaces -counters` command.

3.1.3 clear line vty

Description

With this command, you close a console session on the device.

With the `forceful-clear` option, you close a session and that is not reacting.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`clear line vty {<line-number(2-9)>|all}[forceful-clear]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`line-number`	Number of the connection that will be terminated	2 ... 9
`all`	terminates all connections	-
`forceful-clear`	closes a session that is not reacting	-

Result

> The console session is closed.

Further notes

> You show the logged-on users with the `show users` command.

See also

> Addresses and interface names (Page 31)

3.1.4 configure terminal

Description

> With this command, you change to the Global configuration mode.

Requirement

> You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.
>
> The command prompt is as follows:
>
> `cli#`

Syntax

> Call the command without parameters:
>
> `configure terminal`

Result

> You are now in the Global configuration mode.
>
> The command prompt is as follows:
>
> `cli(config)#`

Further notes

> You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` command.

3.1.5 disable

> With the commands `enable` and `disable` you temporarily change the function rights of the logged in user, the login data remains unchanged.

Description

With this command, you close the Privileged EXEC mode.

You are then in the User EXEC mode.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
disable
```

Result

You are in the User EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli>
```

3.1.6 enable

With the commands `enable` and `disable` you temporarily change the function rights of the logged in user, the login data remains unchanged.

Description

With this command, you change to the Privileged EXEC mode.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli>
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
enable
```

Result

You are prompted to enter the administrator password. After logging in successfully, you are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

3.1.7   logout

Description

With this command, you exit the Command Line Interface.

If you are connected to the device via telnet, the session is closed.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli>
```
or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
logout
```

Result

The CLI session is ended and the Windows Login prompt is displayed.

3.1.8   ping

Description

With this command, you request a response from a device in the network.

This allows you to check whether or not another node is reachable.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli>
```
or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ping [ip]<destination-address>
     [size<byte(0-2080)>]
     [count<packet_count(1-10)>]
     [timeout<seconds(1-100)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
ip	Uses an IP address	-
destination-address	Address of the called node	Enter a valid IP address or a valid hostname.
size	Keyword for the size of the packets to be transferred	-
byte	Keyword for the size of the packets in bytes	0 … 2080
count	Keyword for the number of packets to be requested	-
packet_count	Number of packets	1 … 10
timeout	Response wait time If this time expires, the request is reported as "timed out".	-
seconds	Time to the timeout in seconds	1 … 100

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default values are used.

At system start or when using the restart command with the option memory or factory, the following defaults apply:

Parameter	Default value
size	32
count	3
time-out	1

Result

The messages relating to the response of the called node are displayed.

3.1.9 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the configure terminal command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

3.1.9.1 interface

Description

With this command, you change to the Interface configuration mode.

There you can edit the settings for one interface. You select the interface with the parameters of this command. If you specify a logical interface that does not exist, it will be created. The name of the selected interface is displayed in the command prompt.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
interface {vlan<vlan-id(1-4094)>|port-channel<port-channel-id(1-8)>|<interface-
type><interface-id>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Values
vlan	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
vlan-id	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 … 4094
port-channel	Keyword for a port channel connection	-
port-channel-id	Number of the addressed port channel	1 … 8
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

The placeholder `$$$` is replaced by the following name of the interface:

Type of interface	Command prompt
port-channel	cli(config-if-po-$)#
vlan	cli(config-if-vlan-$)#
fast-ethernet	cli(config-if-Fa$-$)#
gigabitethernet	cli(config-if-Gi$-$)#

The placeholders `$` or `$-$` denote the numbering of the interface.

The ranges of values for the logical interface VLAN and port channel can be found in the table above. You can only call up interfaces that you created with the `vlan` or `channel-group` command.

The ranges of values from the physical interfaces depend on the hardware configuration.

Further notes

You exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command.

You delete a logical interface with the `no interface` command.

You display the status and the configuration of the interfaces with the `show interfaces` command.

See also

Features not supported (Page 26)

3.1.9.2 no interface

Description

With this command, you delete a logical interface.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no interface{vlan<vlan-id(1-4094)>|port-channel<port-channel-id(1-8)>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 … 4094
`port-channel`	Keyword for a port channel connection	-
`port-channel-id`	Number of the addressed port channel	1 … 8

For information on addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The logical interface is deleted.

Further notes

You configure an interface with the `interface` command.

You display the status and the configuration of the interfaces with the `show interfaces` command.

3.1.9.3 cli-console-timeout

Description

With this command, you enable the automatic logout and you configure the timeout setting for the CLI.

Note
No automatic logout from the CLI

If the connection is not terminated after the set time, check the setting of the "keepalive" function on the Telnet client. If the set interval is shorter than the configured time, the lower value applies. You have set, for example, 300 seconds for the automatic logout and 120 seconds for the "keepalive" function. In this case, a packet is sent every 120 seconds that keeps the connection up.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`cli-console-timeout [seconds(60-600)]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`seconds`	Time in seconds until automatic logout after the last entry	60 ... 600
		Default: 300

Result

The time is configured and automatic logout is enabled.

Further notes

You disable automatic logout with the `no cli-console-timeout` command.

You display the current timeout setting with the `show cli-console-timeout` command.

3.1.9.4   no cli-console-timeout

Description

With this command, you disable the automatic logout.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`no cli-console-timeout`

Result

Automatic logout is disabled.

Further notes

You enable automatic logout with the `cli-console-timeout` command.

You display the current timeout setting with the `show cli-console-timeout` command.

3.1.9.5 coordinates height

Description

With this command, you enter a height coordinate.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
coordinates height <meter>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
meter	Input box for the height coordinate	max. 32 characters To use spaces in the entry, enter the height coordinate in quotes: `coordinates height "123 456"`

Result

The height coordinate is created.

3.1.9.6 coordinates latitude

Description

With this command, you enter a latitude coordinate.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
coordinates latitude <latitude>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`latitude`	Input box for the latitude coordinate	max. 32 characters To use spaces in the entry, enter the latitude coordinate in quotes: `coordinates latitude "123 456"`

Result

The latitude coordinate is created.

3.1.9.7 coordinates longitude

Description

With this command, you enter a longitude coordinate.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`coordinates longitude <longitude>`

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`longitude`	Input box for the longitude coordinate	max. 32 characters To use spaces in the entry, enter the longitude coordinate in quotes: `coordinates longitude "123 456"`

Result

The longitude coordinate is created.

3.1.9.8 ethernetip

Description

With this command, you set whether EtherNet/IP will be enabled or disabled after the next device restart.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ethernetip {off|on}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
off	EtherNet/IP will be disabled after the next restart.	-
on	EtherNet/IP will be enabled after the next restart.	• When EtherNet/IP is turned on, PNIO is turned off. The switchover from EtherNet/IP and PNIO has no effect on DCP. • If a PROFINET connection is established; in other words the PNIO AR status is "Online", you cannot enable EtherNet/IP.

Result

EtherNet/IP is enabled or disabled after the next restart.

Further notes

You can display the current EtherNet/IP configuration with the `show ethernetip` command.

You restore the default settings of the EtherNet/IP profile with the `restart` command.

3.1.9.9 pnio

Description

With this command, you configure the setting for PNIO after the next restart of the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
pnio {off|on}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
off	PNIO is deactivated.	If a PROFINET connection is established; in other words the PNIO AR status is "Online", you cannot disable PNIO.
on	PNIO is activated.	When PNIO is turned on, EtherNet/IP is turned off. The switchover from PNIO and EtherNet/IP has no effect on DCP.

Result

PNIO is enabled or disabled after the next restart.

Further notes

You display the current PNIO configuration with the `show pnio` command.

You restore the default settings of the PROFINET IO profile with the `restart` command.

3.1.9.10   system contact

Description

With this command, you enter contact information for the system.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
system contact <string>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`string`	Input box for contact information	max. 255 characters

Result

The contact information is created in the system.

3.1.9.11 system location

Description

With this command, you enter the location information for the system.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
system location <string>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`string`	Input box for the location information	max. 255 characters

Result

The location information is created in the system.

3.1.9.12 system name

Description

This command, you enter a name for the system.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
system name <string>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`string`	Input box for the name	max. 255 characters

Result

The name is created in the system.

3.1.9.13 username

Description

With this command, you change the password of the factory set default users "`user`" and "`admin`".

Requirement

- The user is logged in with the "admin" role.
- You are in the Global configuration mode.

  The command prompt is as follows:

  ```
  cli(config)#
  ```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
username {user|admin} password <passwd>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`user`	User name of the default user with read access to the configuration data.	Enter "`user`".
`admin`	User name of the default user with read and write access to the configuration data.	Enter "`admin`".
`password`	Keyword for a password	-
`passwd`	Value for the password	Enter the password. The password must meet the following password policies: • Password length: at least 8 characters • at least 1 uppercase letter • at least 1 special character • at least 1 number

Result

The password is changed.

Note

Changing the password in Trial mode

Even if you change the password in Trial mode, this change is saved immediately.

Further notes

You show the created users with the `show users` command.

3.1.10 Commands in the interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In the Global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

3.1.10.1 alias

Description

With this command, you assign a name to an interface. The name only provides information and has no effect on the configuration.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
alias <interface-name>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-name`	Name of the interface	max. 63 characters

Result

The interface was assigned a name.

Further notes

You delete the name of the interface with the `no alias` command.

3.1.10.2 no alias

Description

With this command, you delete the name of the interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no alias
```

Result

The name of the interface is removed.

Further notes

You configure the name of the interface with the `alias` command.

3.1.10.3   broadcast-block

Description

With this command, you enable the blocking of broadcast frames on an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
broadcast-block
```

Result

Broadcast frames are blocked.

Further notes

You disable the blocking of broadcast frames with the `no broadcast-block` command.

3.1.10.4   no broadcast-block

Description

With this command, you disable the blocking of broadcast frames on an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no broadcast-block
```

Result

The blocking of broadcast frames is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the blocking of broadcast frames with the `broadcast-block` command.

3.1.10.5   duplex

Description

Electrical interfaces can be operated in full duplex mode or half duplex mode. The options here depend on the connected device.

Optical connections are always operated in full duplex mode since they have a fiber for each transmission direction.

With this command, you configure the duplex mode of an interface. The same mode must be set for connected interfaces.

Requirement

- Autonegotiation is disabled.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode of an electrical interface.

    The command prompt is as follows:

    ```
    cli(config-if-$$$)#
    ```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
duplex {full|half}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`full`	The Interface will be operated in full duplex mode.	Default: `full`
`half`	The Interface will be operated in half duplex mode	-

Result

The duplex mode of the interface is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the duplex mode of the Interface to the default value with the `no duplex` command.

You disable autonegotiation with the `no negotiation` command.

3.1.10.6   no duplex

Description

With this command, you reset the duplex mode of an interface to the default value.

The default value is `full`.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no duplex
```

Result

The duplex mode of the Interface is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the duplex mode of the interface with the `duplex` command.

3.1.10.7 lldp

Description

With this command, you enable the sending and receipt of LLDP packets on the interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
lldp{transmit|receive}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
transmit	The sending of LLDP packets is enabled.	Default: enabled
receive	The receipt of LLDP packets is enabled.	Default: enabled

Note
Enabling both options

When you call this command, you can only select one option.

If you want to enable both options, call up the command again.

Result

Sending or receipt of LLDP packets is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the sending or receipt of LLDP packets with the `no lldp` command.

3.1.10.8 no lldp

Description

With this command, you disable the sending or receipt of LLDP packets on the interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no lldp{transmit|receive}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
transmit	the sending of LLDP packets is disabled
receive	the receipt of LLDP packets is disabled

Note
Disabling both options

When you call this command, you can only select one option.

If you want to disable both options, call up the command again.

Result

Sending or receipt of LLDP packets is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the sending or receipt of LLDP packets with the lldp command.

3.1.10.9 multicast-block

Description

With this command, you enable the blocking of multicast frames on an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
multicast-block
```

Result

Multicast frames are blocked.

Further notes

You disable the blocking of multicast frames with the `no multicast-block` command.

3.1.10.10   no multicast-block

Description

With this command, you disable the blocking of multicast frames on an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no multicast-block
```

Result

The blocking of multicast frames is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the blocking of multicast frames with the `mulitcast-block` command.

3.1.10.11   negotiation

Description

With this command, you enable autonegotiation of connection parameters on an interface.

Autonegotiation must be set for every interface of connected interfaces.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
negotiation
```

Result

The automatic negotiation of connection parameters on an interface is activated.

Further notes

You disable the autonegotiation of connection parameters with the `no negotiation` command.

3.1.10.12   no negotiation

Description

With this command, you disable autonegotiation of connection parameters on an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no negotiation
```

Result

The automatic negotiation of connection parameters on an interface is deactivated.

Further notes

You enable the autonegotiation of connection parameters with the `negotiation` command.

3.1.10.13   shutdown

Description

With this command, you shut down the interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
shutdown [complete]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
without pa-rameters	The interface is disabled but the connection remains.	-
`complete`	The interface is disabled and the connection to the partner device is terminated.	For every optical port that you disable with the `shutdown complete` command, the current consumtion of the device is reduced by 30 mA.

Result

The Interface is shut down.

If you execute this command without parameters, a connection remains displayed. The LED for the port status flashes. However no data is sent or received.

Further notes

You activate the interface with the `no shutdown` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show interfaces` command.

3.1.10.14   no shutdown

Description

With this command, you shut down an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no shutdown
```

Result

The Interface is activated.

Further notes

You deactivate the interface with the `shutdown` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show interfaces`command.

3.1.10.15   speed

Description

With this command, you configure the transmission speed of an interface.

Note

Availability of this function

The transmission speed can only be configured for electrical data transfer.

On optical connections, the transmission speed is fixed.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
speed {10|100}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
10	Transmission speed 10 Mbps
100	Transmission speed 100 Mbps

Result

The transmission speed of the interface is configured.

3.1.10.16   unicast-block

Description

With this command, you enable the blocking of unknown unicast frames on an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
unicast-block
```

Result

Unicast frames are blocked.

Further notes

You disable the blocking of unicast frames with the `no unicast-block` command.

You display the status of this function with `show unicast-block config`.

3.1.10.17   no unicast-block

Description

With this command, you disable the blocking of unknown unicast frames on an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no unicast-block
```

Result

The blocking of unicast frames is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the blocking of unicast frames with the `unicast-block` command.

You display the status of this function with `show unicast-block config`.

3.2 Load and Save

This section describes commands for displaying, copying, saving and downloading files for the device.

Note

Note that during the installation of a previous version, the configuration data can be lost. In this case, the device starts up with the factory configuration settings after the firmware has been installed.

3.2.1 File list

Overview of the file types

File type	Description
Config	Start configuration
ConfigPack	Detailed configuration information. for example, start configuration, users, certificates
Copyright	OSS licenses
Debug	This file contains information for Siemens Support.

File type	Description
EDS	Electronic Data Sheet (EDS)
	Electronic data sheets for describing devices in the EtherNet/IP mode
Firmware	Firmware
GSDML	Information on the device properties
HTTPSCert	HTTPS certificate
LogFile	File with entries from the event log table
MIB	Private MSPS MIB file "scalance_x200_msps.mib"
RunningCLI	This file contains an overview of the current configuration in the form of CLI commands. You can download the text file. The file is not intended to be up-loaded again unchanged.
Script	CLI script file
StartupInfo	Startup log file
Users	File with user names and passwords

3.2.2 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

3.2.2.1 show loadsave files

Description

This command shows the current Load&Save file information.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show loadsave files`

Result

The current Load&Save file information is displayed.

3.2.2.2 show loadsave tftp

Description

This command shows the current configuration of the TFTP server for Load&Save.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show loadsave tftp
```

Result

The current configuration of the TFTP server for Load&Save is displayed.

3.2.3 load tftp

Firmware

The firmware is signed and encrypted. This ensures that only firmware created by Siemens can be downloaded to the device.

Description

With this command, you load the files from a TFTP server.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
load tftp ipv4 <ipv4-address> [port <tcp port (1-65535)>] file <filename> filetype
<filetype>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ipv4`	Keyword for an IPv4 address	-
`ipv4-address`	Value for an IPv4 unicast address	Enter a valid IPv4 unicast address.
`port`	Keyword for the port of the server via which the TFTP connection runs	-
`tcp port`	Number of the port	1 … 65535 Default: 69
`file`	Keyword for a file name to be assigned	-
`filename`	Name of the file	max. 100 characters
`filetype`	Keyword for the file type to be loaded	-
`filetype`	Name of the file type	max. 100 characters

For information on identifiers of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The file is loaded on the device from the TFTP server.

Further notes

With the "`show loadsave files`" command, you can display the file types.

3.2.4 save filetype

Description

With this command, you save files on a TFTP server.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
save filetype <filetype> tftp ipv4 <ipv4-address> [port <tcp port (1-65535)>] file
<filename>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`filetype`	Keyword for a file type to be loaded	-
`filetype`	Name of the file type	max. 100 characters
`tftp`	Keyword for a TFTP server	-
`ipv4`	Keyword for an IPv4 address	-
`ipv4-address`	Value for an IPv4 unicast address	Enter a valid IPv4 unicast address.
`port`	Keyword for the port of the server via which the TFTP connection runs	-
`tcp port`	Number of the port	1 … 65535 Default: 69
`file`	Keyword for a file name to be assigned	-
`filename`	Name of the file	max. 100 characters

For information on identifiers of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The file is saved on the TFTP server.

Further notes

With the "`show loadsave files`" command, you can display the file types.

3.2.5 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

3.2.5.1 loadsave

Description

With this command, you change to the LOADSAVE configuration mode.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
loadsave
```

Result

You are now in the LOADSAVE configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-loadsave)#
```

Further notes

You exit the LOADSAVE configuration mode with the `exit` command.

3.2.6 Commands in the LOADSAVE configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the LOADSAVE configuration mode.

In the Global Configuration mode, enter the `loadsave` command to change to this mode.

You display the valid file types for the commands in the LOADSAVE Configuration mode with the global command `show loadsave tftp`.

● If you exit the LOADSAVE configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global Configuration mode.

● If you exit the LOADSAVE configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

For information on the file types , refer to this list (Page 81).

3.2.6.1 delete

Description

With this command, you call up the possible files or delete a specific file.

Requirement

You are in the LOADSAVE configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-loadsave)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
delete{showfiles|filetype<filetype>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`showfiles`	Shows the available files	-
`filetype`	Keyword for the file type to be deleted	-
`filetype`	Name of the file type	max. 100 characters

Result

The files are displayed or the file is deleted.

Further notes

With the "`show loadsave files`" command, you can display the file types.

3.2.6.2 password

Description

With this command, you activate and configure the password for a file.

Requirement

You are in the LOADSAVE configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-loadsave)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
password {showfiles|filetype<filetype>[pw<password>]}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Values
showfiles	Shows the available files	-
filetype	Shows that the file type follows that will be loaded	-
filetype	Name of the file type	max. 100 characters
pw	Keyword for the password	-
password	Password	Enter the password for the file.

Result

The password for the file is configured and activated.

Further notes

You disable the password with the `no password` command.

3.2.6.3 no password

Description

With this command, you disable the password for a file.

Requirement

You are in the LOADSAVE configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-loadsave)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no password {showfiles|filetype<filetype>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Values
showfiles	Shows the available files	-
filetype	Shows that the file type follows that will be loaded	-
filetype	Name of the file type	max. 100 characters

Result

The password for the file is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the password for the user certificate with the `password` command.

3.2.6.4   tftp filename

Description

With this command, you assign a name to a file type.

The file type decides the type that is affected by the `tftp load` or `tftp save` action. The name decides the file to be copied to or from the TFTP server.

Requirement

You are in the LOADSAVE configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-loadsave)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`tftp filename {showfiles|filetype< filetype >name<filename>}`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`showfiles`	Shows the available files	-
`filetype`	Keyword for a file type to be assigned a name	-
`filetype`	Name of the file type	max. 100 characters
`name`	Keyword for a file name to be assigned to the file type	-
`filename`	Name of the file	max. 100 characters

Result

The file types are displayed or the file type is assigned a name.

Further notes

With the "`show loadsave files`" command, you can display the file types.

3.2.6.5 tftp load

Firmware

The firmware is signed and encrypted. This ensures that only firmware created by Siemens can be downloaded to the device.

Description

With this command, you load a file from a TFTP server into the file system of the device. The TFTP protocol is used for the transfer. You can also display a list of available files.

Requirement

- The name of the file is specified

- You are in the LOADSAVE configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  ```
  cli(config-loadsave)#
  ```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
tftp load{showfiles|filetype<filetype>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
showfiles	Shows the available files	-
filetype	Keyword for a file type to be loaded	-
filetype	Name of the file type	max. 100 characters

Result

The file types are displayed or the file is downloaded to the device.

Further notes

You configure the name of the file with the `tftp filename` command.

With the "`show loadsave files`" command, you can display the file types.

3.2.6.6 tftp save

Description

With this command, you copy a file from the file system of the device to a TFTP server. The TFTP protocol is used for the transfer. You can also display a list of available files.

Requirement

- The name of the file is specified
- You are in the LOADSAVE configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  ```
  cli(config-loadsave)#
  ```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
tftp save {showfiles|filetype<filetype>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
showfiles	Shows the available files	-
filetype	Keyword for a file type to be loaded	-
filetype	Name of the file type	max. 100 characters

Result

The file types are displayed or the file is copied.

Further notes

You configure the name of the file with the `tftp filename` command.

With the "`show loadsave files`" command, you can display the file types.

3.2.6.7 tftp server

Description

With this command, you configure the access to a TFTP server.

Requirement

You are in the LOADSAVE configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-loadsave)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
tftp server ipv4 <ipv4-address>[port<tcp port(1-65535)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ipv4`	Keyword for an IPv4 address	-
`ipv4-address`	Value for an IPv4 unicast address	Enter a valid IPv4 unicast address.
`port`	Keyword for the port of the server via which the TFTP connection runs	-
`tcp port`	Number of the port	1 … 65535

For information on identifiers of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The settings for the access to the selected TFTP server are configured.

3.3 Reset and Defaults

This section describes commands for restarting the device and for restoring the original configuration.

3.3.1 restart

Description

With this command, you restart the device.

Select one of the following configuration settings:

- Device restart with the current configuration
- Device restart with the factory configuration settings.
- Device restart with the default settings of the PROFINET IO profile.
- Device restart with the default settings of the EtherNet/IP profile.
- Device restart with the default settings of the Industrial Ethernet profile.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
restart [{factory | pnio | ethernetip | ie}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
without parameters	The system restarts with the current configuration	• You can only restart the device with administrator privileges. • A device should only be restarted by this CLI command or the corresponding buttons in the WBM and not by a poer cycle on the device.
factory	Restores the factory settings of the device and restarts the device. The factory settings depend on the device.	• By resetting all the settings to the factory settings, the IP address and the passwords are also lost. Following this, the device can only be accessed via the serial interface, using the Primary Setup Tool or using DHCP. • With the appropriate attachment, a previously correctly configured device can cause circulating frames and therefore the failure of the data traffic.
pnio	Restores the default settings of the PROFINET IO profile and restarts the device.	• The profiles provide a preconfiguration for various use cases of the devices. • When you start a device with the default settings of a profile, the settings are reset to the factory settings and some parameters are set so that they are designed for a use case. • In contrast to resetting to the factory settings. the users and passwords are retained after the restart. The configured IP address is lost so that device can then only be accessed via the serial interface, using the Primary Setup Tool or using DHCP. • With the appropriate attachment, a previously correctly configured device can cause circulating frames and therefore the failure of the data traffic.
ethernetip	Restores the default settings of the EtherNet/IP profile and restarts the device.	
ie	Restores the default settings of the Industrial Ethernet profile and restarts the device.	

Result

The device is restarted with the selected settings.

3.4 Configuration Save & Restore

This section describes commands for displaying, saving and restoring configuration settings.

3.4.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

3.4.1.1 show running-config

Note

The IE switch does not support all parameters, refer to the section "Features not supported (Page 26)".

Description

This command shows configuration settings of the device.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show running-config
 [{
    syslog|dhcp|qos|stp|la|pnac|vlan<vlan-id(1-4094)>|
    interface
      {port-channel<port-channel-id(1-8)>|
       <interface-type><interface-list>|
       vlan<vlan-id(1-4094)>
       }|
    ssh|ssl|acl|ip|snmp|radius|rmon|igmp|sntp|http|
    broadcast-blocking|multicast-blocking|locked-port|auto-logout|
    time|ntp|auto-save|panel-button|cos-map|dscp-map|
    output-rate-limit|unicast-blocking|ospf|vrrp|loopd|events|
    redundancy|passive|umac|nat|fmp|pim|msdp}]
[all]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
syslog	Shows the configuration settings of the Syslog function	-
dhcp	shows the configuration settings of the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol	-
qos	shows the configuration settings of QoS (Quality of Service)	-
stp	Shows the configuration settings of the Spanning Tree protocol	-
la	Shows the configuration settings of the Link Aggregation function	-
pnac	shows the configuration settings of the port-based network access control	-
vlan	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
vlan-id	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
port-channel	Keyword for a port channel connection	-
port-channel-id	Number of the addressed port channel	1 … 8
interface-type	Type of interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-list	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
ssh	Shows the configuration settings of the Secure Shell protocol	-
ssl	Shows the configuration settings of the Secure Sockets Layer protocol	-
acl	Shows the configuration settings of the access control lists	-
ip	Shows the configuration settings of the Internet Protocol	-
snmp	Shows the configuration settings of the Simple Network Management Protocol	-
radius	shows the configuration settings of the Remote Authentication Dial-In User service	-
rmon	Shows the configuration settings of the Remote Monitoring function	-
igmp	Shows the configuration settings of the Internet Group Management Protocol	-
sntp	Shows the configuration settings of the Simple Network Time Protocol	-
http	Shows the configuration settings of the Hypertext Transfer Protocol	-
broadcast-blocking	Shows the configuration settings of the broadcast blocking	-
multicast-blocking	Shows the configuration settings of the multicast blocking	-

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
locked-port	Shows the configuration settings of the locked port function	-
auto-logout	Shows the configuration settings of the auto logout function	-
time	Shows the configuration settings of the system time	-
ntp	Shows the configuration settings of the Network Time Protocol	-
auto-save	Shows the configuration settings of the auto save function	-
panel-button	Shows the configuration settings of the Panel Button function	-
cos-map	Shows the configuration settings of the COS function	-
dscp-map	Shows the configuration settings of the DSCP map function	-
output-rate-limit	Shows the configuration settings of the output rate limit function	-
unicast-blocking	Shows the configuration settings of the unicast blocking	-
ospf	Shows the configuration settings of the Open Shortest Path First	-
vrrp	Shows the configuration settings of the Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol	-
loopd	Shows the configuration settings of loop detection	-
events	Shows the configuration settings of the events	-
redundancy	Shows the configuration settings of the redundancy	-
passive	Shows the configuration settings of passive listening	-
umac	Shows the configuration settings of the user configuration	-
nat	Shows the configuration settings of the Network Address Translation	-
fmp	Shows the configuration settings of the Fiber Monitoring protocol	-
pim	Shows the configuration settings of the Independent Multicast protocol	-
msdp	Shows the configuration settings of the Multicast Source Discovery protocol	-
all	shows all configuration settings and all default parameters. Some parameters cannot be changed.	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The selected configuration settings of the device are displayed.

3.4.2 write startup-config

Description

With this command, you save the changes to the configuration in the configuration file.

The use of this command is required in the Trial mode. It can also be used in "auto save mode".

Requirement

- The Trial mode is activated.
- You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `*cli(...)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

`write startup-config`

Result

The changes are saved in the configuration file.

Use the `restart` command without parameters to restart the system with this configuration.

Further notes

You enable the auto save function or disable the Trial mode with the `auto-save` command.

You disable the auto save function or enable the Trial mode with the `no auto-save` command.

3.4.3 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

3.4.3.1 auto-save

Description

The CLI can save changes to the configuration automatically.

If you first want to test changes made to the configuration so that you can discard them afterwards if necessary, you can disable the auto save function.

You are then in the Trial mode.

Changes to the configuration that you have not saved, are indicated by an asterisk in front of the command prompt: `*cli(...)#`.

You save the changes to the configuration with the `write startup-config` command.

With the `auto-save` command, you enable the auto save function.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`auto-save`

As default the function is "enabled".

Result

The auto save function is enabled.

Further notes

You save changes to the configuration in the Trial mode with the `write startup-config` command.

You disable the function with the `no auto-save` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show device information`command.

3.4.3.2 no auto-save

Description

With this command, you disable the auto save function.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no auto-save
```

Result

The auto save function is disabled. The Trial mode is activated.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `auto-save` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show device information` command.

You save changes to the configuration in the Trial mode with the `write startupconfig` command.

3.5 PoE

3.5.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

3.5.1.1 show poe status

Description

This command shows specific information for all or for a selected PoE interface (PoE: Power over Ethernet).

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show poe status [interface <interface-type> <interface-id>]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

If you use the command without setting parameters, information about all PoE interfaces is displayed.

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The information for the selected PoE interface is displayed.

3.5.1.2 show pse status

Description

This command shows the current settings of the PoE power supply of the device.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show pse status [<integer>]`

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`integer`	Number of the PSE	-

If you do not select any parameter, the entries are displayed for all available PSEs.

Result

The current settings of the PoE power supply of the device are displayed.

3.5.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

3.5.2.1 poe pse usage

Description

With this command, you set a value (as a percentage) for the "Usage Threshold" parameter. This specifies how many percent of the maximum power the connected devices will use. As soon as the power being used by the end devices exceeds this percentage, an event is triggered. An event is also entered in the log. You display the entries of the log with the command `show logbook`. You will find more information on this command in the section "show logbook (Page 462)".

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
poe pse <integer (1-4)> usage <integer (1-100)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`integer`	Number of the PSE	1 … 4
`integer`	Value for "Usage Threshold" as a percentage.	1 ... 100 Default: 80%

Result

The value for "Usage Threshold" is configured.

3.5.2.2 no poe pse usage

Description

With this command, you reset the parameter "Usage Threshold" to the default value.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no poe pse <integer (1-4)> usage
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`integer`	Number of the PSE	1 … 4

Result

The parameter "Usage Threshold" is reset to the default value.

3.5.3 Commands in the Interface Configuration mode

3.5.3.1 Introductory sentence for the interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In the Global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

3.5.3.2 poe active

Description

With this command, you activate PoE for the interface in whose interface configuration mode you are currently working.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of a PoE interface.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
poe active
```

Result

PoE is activated for the corresponding interface.

3.5.3.3 no poe active

Description

With this command, you deactivate PoE for the interface in whose interface configuration mode you are currently working.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of a PoE interface.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no poe active
```

Result

PoE is deactivated for the corresponding interface.

3.5.3.4 poe custom maxpwr

Description

With this command you set the maximum power that a port makes available to supply a connected device.

This value is taken into account when the function is enabled with the `poe custom maxpwr active` command.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of a PoE interface.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameter:

```
poe custom maxpwr <integer(0-30)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`integer`	Value for the user-defined maximum power in watts	0 ... 30

Result

The maximum power is set.

Further notes

You enable the user-defined maximum power for the interface with the `poe custom maxpwr active` command.

You disable the user-defined maximum power for the interface with the `no poe custom maxpwr active` command.

You delete the user-defined maximum power for the interface with the `no poe custom maxpwr` command.

3.5.3.5 no poe custom maxpwr

Description

With this command, you delete the user-defined maximum power for a port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of a PoE interface.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no poe custom maxpwr
```

Result

The user-defined maximum power is deleted.

Further notes

You configure the user-defined maximum power for the interface with the `poe custom maxpwr` command.

You enable the user-defined maximum power for the interface with the `poe custom maxpwr active` command.

You disable the user-defined maximum power for the interface with the `no poe custom maxpwr active` command.

3.5.3.6 poe custom maxpwr active

Description

With this command, you enable use of the user-defined maximum power for the interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of a PoE interface.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
poe custom maxpwr active
```

Result

The user-defined maximum power is enabled for the relevant interface.

Further notes

You configure the user-defined maximum power for an interface with the `poe custom maxpwr` command.

You disable the use of the user-defined maximum power with the `no poe custom maxpwr active` command.

3.5.3.7 no poe custom maxpwr active

Description

With this command, you disable use of the user-defined maximum power for the interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of a PoE interface.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no poe custom maxpwr active
```

Result

The user-defined maximum power is disabled for the relevant interface.

Further notes

You configure the user-defined maximum power for an interface with the `poe custom maxpwr` command.

You enable the use of the user-defined maximum power with the `poe custom maxpwr active` command.

3.5.3.8   poe type

Description

This command specifies a character string that describes a connected device in greater detail.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode of a PoE interface.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
poe type <string>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
string	Description of a connected device	max. 255 characters

Result

The description of the connected device has been specified.

3.5.3.9   no poe type

Description

With this command, you delete the description for a connected device.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of a PoE interface.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no poe type
```

Result

The description of the corresponding device is deleted.

3.5.3.10   poe prio

Description

With this command, you specify the priority of the power supply for an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode of a PoE interface.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
poe prio {low|high|critical}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
low	low priority
high	medium priority
critical	high priority

If the power of the connected power supply is inadequate to supply all connected devices, devices with a higher priority are given preference.

If the same priority is set for two ports, the port with the lower number will be preferred when necessary.

Result

The priority of the corresponding interface has been specified.

3.5.3.11   no poe prio

Description

With this command, you set the priority of an interface to the default value "low".

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode of a PoE interface.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no poe prio
```

Result

The priority of the corresponding interface has been set to "low".

3.6 SINEMA

3.6.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

3.6.1.1 show sinema

Description

This command shows whether the SINEMA configuration interface is enabled or disabled.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli> or cli#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show sinema
```

Result

The setting of the SINEMA configuration interface is displayed.

3.6.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

3.6.2.1 sinema

Description

With this command, you enable the SINEMA configuration interface.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
sinema
```

Result

The SINEMA configuration interface is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the SINEMA configuration interface with the `no sinema` command.

You display the setting whether the SINEMA configuration interface is enabled or disabled with the command `show sinema`.

3.6.2.2 no sinema

Description

With this command, you disable the SINEMA configuration interface.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no sinema
```

Result

The SINEMA configuration interface is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the SINEMA configuration interface with the `sinema` command.

You display the setting whether the SINEMA configuration interface is enabled or disabled with the command `show sinema`.

Functions specific to SCALANCE

4

This part contains the sections that describe functions specific to SCALANCE.

4.1 PLUG

The C-PLUG stores the configuration of a device and can therefore transfer the configuration of the old device to the new device when a device is replaced.

This section describes the commands relevant for working with the C-PLUG.

4.1.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

4.1.1.1 show plug

Description

This command shows the current information of the PLUG.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show plug`

Result

The current information of the PLUG is diplayed.

4.1.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

4.1.2.1 plug

Description

With this command, you change to the Plug Configuration mode.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
plug
```

Result

You are now in the Plug Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-plug)#
```

Further notes

You exit the Plug Configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command.

4.1.3 Commands in the Plug configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Plug Configuration mode.

In the Global Configuration mode, enter the `plug` command to change to this mode.

- If you exit the Plug Configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global Configuration mode.

- If you exit the Plug Configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

4.1.3.1   factoryclean

Description

With this command, you delete the device configuration stored on the PLUG.

Requirement

- There is a device configuration on the PLUG.
- You are in the Plug Configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-plug)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`factoryclean`

Result

The device configuration on the PLUG is deleted.

4.1.3.2   write

Description

With this command, you format the PLUG and copy the current device configuration to it.

Requirement

- The PLUG is formatted.
- You are in the Plug Configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-plug)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

`write`

Result

The current device configuration has been copied to the formatted PLUG.

4.2 WBM

On the device, you can limit the time available for access with Web Based Management. If no entry is made for a specific time, the WBM session is closed.

This section describes commands relevant for the configuration of this feature.

4.2.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

4.2.1.1 show web-session-timeout

Description

This command shows the timeout setting for the WBM.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show web-session-timeout`

Result

The timeout setting for the WBM is displayed.

4.2.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

4.2.2.1   web-session-timeout

Description

With this command, you enable the automatic logoff and you configure the timeout setting for the WBM.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
web-session-timeout[seconds(60-3600)]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`seconds`	Time in seconds until automatic logout after the last entry	60 … 3600
		Default: 900

Result

The time is configured and automatic logout is enabled.

Further notes

You disable automatic logoff with the `no web-session-timeout` command.

You display the current timeout setting with the `show web-session-timeout` command.

4.2.2.2   no web-session-timeout

Description

With this command, you disable the automatic logoff.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no web-session-timeout
```

Result

Automatic logoff is disabled.

Further notes

You enable automatic logoff with the `web-session-timeout` command.

You display the current timeout setting with the `show web-session-timeout` command.

4.3 Panel button

This section describes the commands relevant for working with the Panel Button function.

4.3.1 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

4.3.1.1 panel-button control-factory-defaults

Description

With this command, you enable the following function of the "RESET" button:

● When the button is pressed for more than 12 seconds, there is a restart with the factory settings.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
panel-button control-factory-defaults
```

Result

The function of the "RESET" button for restarting with factory settings is enabled.

Further notes

You disable this function with the `no panel-button control-factory-defaults` command.

4.3.1.2   no panel-button control-factory-defaults

Description

With this command, you disable the following function of the "RESET" button:

● When the button is pressed for more than 12 seconds, there is a restart with the factory settings.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no panel-button control-factory-defaults
```

Result

The function of the "RESET" button for restarting with factory settings is enabled or disabled.

Further notes

You enable this function with the `panel-button control-factory-defaults` command.

4.3.1.3   set panel-button control-faultmask

Description

With this command, you enable or disable the following function of the "SELECT/SET" button:

- If display mode D "fault mask" is displayed and the button is pressed for 5 - 12 seconds, the fault mask is set.

This function corresponds to calling the `power` and `link down` commands.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
set panel-button control-faultmask{enable|disable}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
enable	enables the function for setting the fault mask	Default: enabled
disable	disables the function for setting the fault mask	-

Result

The function of the "SELECT/SET" button for setting the fault mask is enabled or disabled.

4.4   Signaling contact

This section describes the commands relevant for working with the signaling contact.

4.4.1   The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

4.4.1.1 show signaling contact

Description

This command shows the current configuration of the signaling contact.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show signaling-contact`

Result

The current configuration of the signaling contact is displayed.

4.4.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

4.4.2.1 signaling contact mode

Description

With this command, you specify the reaction of the signaling contact.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`signaling-contact mode {conventional | aligned}`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
conventional	An error/fault is displayed by the fault LED and the signaling contact is opened. When the error/fault state no longer exists, the fault LED goes off and the signaling contact is closed.
aligned	The way the signaling contact works does not depend on the error/fault that has occurred. The signaling contact can be opened or closed as required by user actions.

Result

The reaction of the signaling contact is specified.

Further notes

You display the setting with the `show signaling contact` command.

4.4.2.2 signaling-contact status

Description

With this command, you close or open the signaling contact.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`signaling-contact status {open|close}`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
open	Signaling contact is opened.
close	Signaling contact is closed.

Result

The signaling contact is opened or closed.

Further notes

You display the setting with the `show signaling contact` command.

System time

<div style="text-align: right; font-size: 2em;">5</div>

5.1 System time setting

This section describes commands relevant for the configuration of the system time.

5.1.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

5.1.1.1 show dst info

Description

This command shows all the entries for daylight saving time stored on the device.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show dst info`

Result

The entries for daylight saving time are displayed.

5.1.1.2 show time

Description

This command shows the settings of the system clock.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show time`

Result

The settings for the system clock are displayed.

5.1.2   Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

5.1.2.1   time

Description

With this command, you configure the way in which the system time is obtained.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`time{manual|ntp|sntp|SINEC}`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`manual`	The system time is entered by the user
`ntp`	The system time is obtained from an NTP server

Parameter	Description
sntp	The system time is obtained from an SNTP server
SINEC	The system time is obtained using the "SIMATIC time protocol"

Result

The method of obtaining the system time is configured.

Further notes

You display the settings for the system clock with the show time command.

5.1.2.2   time set

Description

With this command, you set the system clock.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
time set hh:mm:ss <day (1-31)>
{january|february|march|april|may|june|july|august|september|october|november|decembe
r}
<year (2000 - 2035)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
hh:mm:ss	Time of day	Hour, minute, second each separated by ":" no link
day	Day of the month	1 ... 31
-	Month	january, february, march, april, may, june, july, august, september, october, november, december
year	Year	2000 ... 2035

Result

The system time is set.

Further notes

You display the settings for the system clock with the `show time` command.

5.1.2.3 time dst date

Description

With this command, you configure the start and end of daylight saving time.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
time dst date <name(16)> <year (1900-2099)> begin <MMDDhh> end <MMDDhh>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
name	Name of the entry	maximum 16 characters
year	Year	1900 ... 2099
begin	Keyword for the start of daylight saving time.	-
MMDDhh	Time for the start of daylight saving time.	Time in the format MM Month DD Day hh Hour
end	Keyword for the end of daylight saving time.	-
MMDDhh	Time for the end of daylight saving time.	Time in the format MM Month DD Day hh Hour

Result

The entry for the start and end of daylight saving time was created.

Further notes

You display the settings for the daylight saving time changeover with the `show dst info` command.

5.1.2.4 time dst recurring

Description

With this command, you configure the start and end of daylight saving time with a generic description.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
time dst recurring <name(16)> begin {<week(1-4)> | last} <weekday> <month> <hour> end
{<week(1-4)> | last} <weekday> <month> <hour>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
name	Name of the entry	maximum 16 characters
begin	Keyword for the start of daylight saving time.	-
week	Calendar week in a month	1 … 4
last	Keyword for the last calendar week in a month	-
weekday	Weekday	monday, tuesday, wednesday, thursday, friday, saturday, sunday
month	Month	january, february, march, april, may, june, july, august, september, october, november, december
hour	Hour	0 ... 23
end	Keyword for the end of daylight saving time.	-

Result

The entry for the start and end of daylight saving time was created.

Further notes

You display the settings for the daylight saving time changeover with the `show dst info` command.

5.1.2.5   no time dst

Description

With this command you delete the entry for the start and end of daylight saving time with the specified name. If you do not specify a name as the parameter, all entries are deleted.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no time dst [<name(16)>]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`name`	Name of the entry	maximum 16 characters

Result

An entry or the entries for the start and end of daylight saving time was/were deleted.

Further notes

You display the settings for the daylight saving time changeover with the `show dst info` command.

5.2   NTP client

This section describes commands relevant for configuration of the NTP client.

5.2.1   The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

5.2.1.1 show ntp info

Description

This command shows the current settings for the Network Time Protocol (NTP).

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show ntp info`

Result

The current NTP settings are displayed.

5.2.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

5.2.2.1 ntp

Description

With this command, you change to the Network Time Protocol (NTP).

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`ntp`

Result

You are now in the NTP configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-ntp)#`

Further notes

You exit the NTP configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command.

5.2.3 Commands in the NTP configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the NTP configuration mode.

In the Global configuration mode, enter the `ntp` command to change to this mode.

- If you exit the NTP configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.

- If you exit the NTP configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

5.2.3.1 ntp server

Description

With this command, you configure the connection to a server on the NTP client.

Note

To avoid time jumps, make sure that there is only one time server in the network.

Requirement

You are in the NTP configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-ntp)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ntp server ipv4 <ip_addr>[port<1025-36564>][poll<seconds(64-1024)>]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
ipv4	Keyword for an IPv4 address	-
ip_addr	Value for the IPv4 address of the time server	Enter a valid IPv4 address
port	UDP port of the time server	1025 … 36564
poll	Keyword for the time after which the time of day is re-quested again	-
seconds	Value for the time in seconds	64 … 1024

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The connection to a server is configured on the NTP client.

Further notes

You delete the connection to a server with the `no ntp server` command.

5.2.3.2 no ntp server

Description

With this command, you delete the connection to a server on the NTP client.

Requirement

You are in the NTP configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-ntp)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no ntp server
```

Result

The connection to a server is deleted on the NTP client.

Further notes

> You configure the connection to a server with the `ntp server` command.

5.2.3.3 ntp time diff

Description

> With this command, you configure the time difference between the device and the NTP server.

Requirement

> You are in the NTP configuration mode.
>
> The command prompt is as follows:
>
> `cli(config-ntp)#`

Syntax

> Call up the command with the following parameters:
>
> `ntp time diff <(+/-hh:mm)>`
>
> The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
+	Time zones to the west of the NTP server time zone
-	Time zones to the east of the NTP server time zone
hh	Number of hours difference
mm	Number of minutes difference

> Enter the number of hours and number of minutes with two digits each.
>
> Default: No time difference.

Result

> The time difference between the device and the NTP server is configured.

5.3 SNTP client

> This section describes commands relevant for configuration of the SNTP client.

5.3.1 The "show" commands

> This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

5.3.1.1 show sntp broadcast-mode status

Description

This command shows the current configuration of the broadcast mode of SNTP.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show sntp broadcast-mode status`

Result

The current SNTP broadcast configuration is displayed.

5.3.1.2 show sntp unicast-mode status

Description

This command shows the current configuration of the unicast mode of SNTP.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show sntp unicast-mode status`

Result

The current SNTP unicast configuration is displayed.

5.3.1.3 show sntp status

Description

This command shows the settings of the Simple Network Time Protocol.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show sntp status`

Result

The settings of SNTP are displayed.

5.3.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

5.3.2.1 sntp

Description

With this command, you change to the SNTP configuration mode.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
sntp
```

Result

You are now in the SNTP configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-sntp)#
```

Further notes

You exit the SNTP configuration modewith the `end` or `exit` command.

5.3.3 Commands in the SNTP configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the SNTP configuration mode.

In the Global configuration mode, enter the `sntp` command to change to this mode.

● If you exit the SNTP configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.

● If you exit the SNTP configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

5.3.3.1 sntp client addressing-mode

Description

With this command, you configure the addressing mode of the SNTP client as unicast or broadcast.

Requirement

● The SNTP client is activated.

● You are in the SNTP Configuration mode.
The command prompt is:
```
cli(config-sntp)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
sntp client addressing-mode{unicast|broadcast}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
unicast	configures the SNTP client in unicast mode	Default: unicast enabled
broadcast	configures the SNTP client in broadcast mode	-

Result

The addressing mode of the SNTP client is configured.

Further notes

You display this setting and other information with the `show sntp status` command.

You display the settings for the unicast mode with the `show sntp unicast-mode status` command.

You display the settings for the broadcast mode with the `show sntp broadcast-mode status` command.

5.3.3.2   sntp time diff

Description

With this command, you configure the time difference of the system time relative to the UTC time.

Requirement

- The SNTP server must have started up.

- You are in the SNTP Configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  ```
  cli(config-sntp)#
  ```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
sntp time diff <(+/-hh:mm)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
+	Time zones to the west of the SNTP server time zone
-	Time zones to the east of the SNTP server time zone

Parameter	Description
hh	Number of hours difference
mm	Number of minutes difference

Enter the time difference as follows:

- with sign

- without spaces

- Hours and minutes both two digits (with leading zero)

Default: no time difference

Result

The time zone of the system time is configured.

Further notes

You can display the settings of this function and other information with the `show sntp status`command.

5.3.3.3   sntp unicast-server ipv4

Description

With this command, you configure an SNTP unicast server.

Note

To avoid time jumps, make sure that there is only one time server in the network.

Requirement

- The addressing mode of the SNTP client is configured as "unicast".

- You are in the SNTP configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-sntp)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`sntp unicast-server ipv4 <ucast_addr> [port<1025-36564>][poll<seconds(16-16284)>]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ipv4`	Keyword for an IP address	-
`ucast_addr`	Value for an IPv4 unicast address	Enter a valid IPv4 unicast address.
`port`	UDP port of the time server	1025 … 36564 Default: 123
`poll`	Keyword for the time after which the time of day is requested again	-
`seconds`	Value for the time in seconds	16 ... 16284

Result

The SNTP unicast server is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the setting to the default with the `no sntp unicast-server ipv4` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show sntp unicast-mode status` command.

5.3.3.4 no sntp unicast-server ipv4

Description

With this command, you delete the attributes for an SNTP unicast server and reset the address.

Requirement

You are in the SNTP configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-sntp)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no sntp unicast-server ipv4<ucast_addr>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values
`ucast_addr`	Value for an IPv4 unicast address	Enter a valid IPv4 unicast address.

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The SNTP unicast server is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the setting with the `sntp unicast-server ipv4` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show sntp unicast-mode status` command.

Network structures

6

This part contains the sections that describe the commands for configuring and managing various network structures.

The following technologies are available:

- The establishment of independent structures even across the boundaries of subnets using virtual networks (VLANs)
  This can result in the following advantages:

  - Administration:
    Devices can be grouped together to form a logical units regardless of their physical location

  - Performance:
    By prioritizing, time-critical data (process data, streams) can be given priority for transfer

  - Security:
    The transition between VLANs can only be controlled by an administrator

- Aggregation of interfaces or connections between devices to increase the data transmission rate and reliability (link aggregation, port aggregation)

- Detection and monitoring of parallel connections or loops in an Ethernet network by setting up a tree structure (loop detection)

- Improved reliability by adapting the tree structure if transmission is disrupted (Spanning Tree)

- Splitting up of the network into smaller units that are connected together via managed connection pairs (standby connection)

6.1 VLAN

This section describes commands for configuring and managing virtual networks (VLANs).

With the following commands, note which "Base bridge mode" you are in. If you are in the "Transparent Bridge" mode, all settings relate to the management VLAN: VLAN 1.

You change the mode with the `base bridge-mode` command.

6.1.1 The "show" commands VLAN bridge)

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

6.1.1.1   show mac-address-table

Description

This command shows the table with the static and dynamic unicast MAC addresses and multicast MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show mac-address-table [vlan<vlan-range>][address<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>]
    [interface <interface-type><interface-id>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN or VLAN range	-
`vlan-range`	Number of the addressed VLAN or VLAN range	1 ... 4094
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The entries of the MAC addresses table are displayed.

6.1.1.2   show mac-address-table count

Description

With this command, you show the number of MAC addresses for all or a selected VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show mac-address-table count[vlan<vlan-id(1-4094)>]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
vlan	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
vlan-id	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the total number of entries is displayed for all VLANs.

Result

The number of MAC addresses for the selected VLAN is displayed.

6.1.1.3   show mac-address-table dynamic multicast

Description

This command shows the table with the dynamic multicast MAC addresses assigned by the device.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show mac-address-table dynamic multicast[vlan<vlan-range>]
    [address<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>]
    [{interface<interface-type><interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-range`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type of interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The dynamic multicast MAC addresses are displayed.

6.1.1.4 show mac-address-table dynamic unicast

Description

This command shows the table with the dynamic unicast MAC addresses assigned by the device.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show mac-address-table dynamic unicast[vlan<vlan-range>]
    [address<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>][{interface<interface-type>
    <interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-range`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The dynamic unicast MAC addresses are displayed.

6.1.1.5 show mac-address-table static multicast

Description

This command shows the table with the static multicast MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show mac-address-table static multicast[vlan<vlan-range>]
  [address<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>][{interface<interface-type><interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-range`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The static multicast MAC addresses are displayed.

6.1.1.6 show mac-address-table static unicast

Description

This command shows the table with the static unicast MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show mac-address-table static unicast[vlan<vlan-range>]
   [address<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>][{interface<interface-type><interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
vlan	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
vlan-range	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
address	Keyword for a MAC address	-
aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa	MAC address	-
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The static unicast MAC addresses are displayed.

6.1.1.7 show vlan

Description

This command shows the specific information for all or a selected VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show vlan[brief|id<vlan-range>|summary]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`brief`	Shows brief information about all VLANs	-
`id`	Keyword for a VLAN or VLAN range	-
`vlan-range`	Number of the addressed VLAN or VLAN range	1 ... 4094
`summary`	Shows a summary of the VLANs	

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries of all available interfaces are displayed.

Result

The information for the selected VLAN is displayed.

6.1.1.8 show vlan device info

Description

This command shows all the global information that is valid for all VLANs.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show vlan device info`

Result

The global information is displayed.

6.1.1.9 show vlan learning params

Description

This command shows the parameters for the automatic learning of addresses for selected or all VLANs (active and inactive VLANs).

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show vlan learning params[vlan<vlan-range>]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN or VLAN range	-
`vlan-range`	Number of the addressed VLAN or VLAN range	1 ... 4094

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries of all available interfaces are displayed.

Result

The settings for the automatic learning of addresses are displayed.

6.1.1.10 show vlan port config

Description

This command shows the VLAN-specific information for ports.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show vlan port config[{port<interface-type><interface-id>}]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`port`	Keyword for a port	-
`interface-type`	Type of interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on identifiers of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries of all available interfaces are displayed.

Result

The information about the ports is displayed.

6.1.2 Commands in the global configuration mode (VLAN bridge)

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

6.1.2.1 base bridge-mode

Description

With this command, you configure whether or not the device forwards frames with VLAN tags transparently (IEEE 802.1D/Transparent Bridge) or takes VLAN information into account (IEEE 802.1Q/VLAN Bridge).

Note

Changing base bridge mode

Note the section "Changing base bridge mode". This section describes how a change affects the existing configuration.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
base bridge-mode {dot1d-bridge|dot1q-vlan}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / notes
dot1d-bridge	Sets the mode "Transparent Bridge" for the device. VLAN tags are not taken into account or changed but are forwarded transparently. In this mode, you cannot create any VLANs. Only a management VLAN is available: VLAN 1.	Default setting with PROFINET variants
dot1q-vlan	Sets the mode "VLAN Bridge" for the device. VLAN information is taken into account.	Default setting with Ether-Net/IP variants

Result

The device mode is configured.

Changing base bridge mode

802.1D Transparent Bridge → 802.1Q VLAN Bridge

If you change the Base bridge mode from Transparent Bridge to VLAN Bridge, this has the following effects

● All static and dynamic unicast entries are deleted.

● All static and dynamic multicast entries are deleted.

● With spanning tree you can set the following protocol compatibility: STP, RSTP and MSTP

802.1Q VLAN Bridge → 802.1D Transparent Bridge

If you change the Base bridge mode from VLAN Bridge to Transparent Bridge, this has the following effects

● All VLAN configurations are deleted.

● A management VLAN is created: VLAN 1.

● All static and dynamic unicast entries are deleted.

● All static and dynamic multicast entries are deleted.

● With spanning tree you can set the following protocol compatibility: STP and RSTP

● You cannot use GVRP.

● You cannot use guest VLAN.

● The VLAN assignment cannot be adopted from the RADIUS server.

Further notes

You can display the status of this function and other VLAN information with the `show vlan device info` command.

6.1.2.2   interface range

Description

With this command, you can put several interfaces or the interfaces of VLANs together and configure them together. The configurations are valid for all interfaces of the specified range.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
interface range
(
  {<interface-type> <0/a-b,0/c,...>}
  {vlan <vlan-id(1-4094)> - <vlan-id(2-4094)>}
)
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-type`	Keyword for an interface	Enter a valid interface.
`0/a-b, 0/c,...`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	2 ... 4094

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you want to address several VLANs with this command, you must insert a blank before and after the hyphen, for example `interface range vlan 5 - 10`.

Result

The interfaces or interfaces of VLANs were put together to form an interface range.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-vlan-range)#
```

The configuration commands you enter in a mode apply to all interfaces of this area.

Further notes

With the `no interface range` command, you remove VLANs from this range or break it up.

6.1.2.3   no interface range

Description

With this command, you remove the interfaces or interfaces of VLANs from the interface range or break it up if you first remove all previously added interfaces.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`no interface range vlan <vlan-id(1-4094)> - <vlan-id(2-4094)>`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	2 ... 4094

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you address several VLANs, you must insert a blank before and after the hyphen, for example `no interface range vlan 5 - 10`.

Result

The VLANs have been removed from the specified interface area.

Further notes

With the `interface range` command, you can put several interfaces or VLANs together to be able to configure them together.

6.1.2.4   mgmt vlan

Description

With this command, you change the agent VLAN ID. You can only use VLANs that have already been configured.

Note

Changing the agent VLAN ID

If the configuration PC is connected directly to the device via Ethernet and you change the agent VLAN ID, the device is no longer reachable via Ethernet following the change.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
mgmt vlan <vlan-id(1-4094)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values
vlan-id	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

Result

The Agent VLAN ID has been changed.

Further notes

You show the configuration of the IP interfaces with the `show ip interface` command.

6.1.2.5 vlan

Description

With this command, you create a VLAN on the device and change to the VLAN configuration mode.

In the provider backbone bridge mode, this command is used to create user, service and backbone VLANs.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
vlan <vlan-id(1-4094)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
vlan-id	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

Do not enter any leading zeros with the number of the VLAN.

Result

The VLAN is created.

You are now in the VLAN configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Further notes

You delete the VLAN with the `no vlan` command.

You can display information about the VLAN with the `show vlan` command.

6.1.2.6   no vlan

Description

With this command, you delete a VLAN on the device.

Requirement

- The VLAN must not be assigned to a physical port.
- You are in the Global Configuration mode.

  The command prompt is as follows:

  ```
  cli(config)#
  ```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameter:

```
no vlan <vlan-id(1-4094)>
```

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

The VLAN with number 1 cannot be deleted.

Result

The VLAN is deleted

Further notes

With the `vlan` command, you create a VLAN on the device.

You can display information about the VLAN with the `show vlan` command.

6.1.2.7   vlan range

Description

With this command, you can select several VLANs and configure them together. The configurations are valid for all selected VLANs.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
vlan range <vlan-id(1-4094)> - <vlan-id(2-4094)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	2 ... 4094

Enter a space before and after the hyphen, e.g. `vlan range 5 - 10`.

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The command prompt is as follows:

```
CLI(config-vlan-range)#
```

Configuration commands you enter with this command prompt apply to all selected VLANs.

Further notes

With the command `exit`, you return to the Global configuration mode.

6.1.3   Commands in the Interface configuration mode (VLAN Bridge)

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In the Global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

● If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.

● If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

6.1.3.1 switchport acceptable-frame-type

Description

With this command, you configure which types of frames are accepted.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
switchport acceptable-frame-type{all|tagged}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`all`	All frames are accepted. **Note:** On a ring port only the parameter "all" is supported.	Default: `all`
`tagged`	Untagged frames are discarded.	-

Result

The setting is enabled.

Further notes

You can reset the setting to the default with the `no switchport acceptable-frame-type` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show vlan port config` command.

6.1.3.2   no switchport acceptable-frame-type

Description

With this command, you reset the setting for the types of frames accepted by the interface to the default value.

The default value is `all`.

The interface accepts tagged and untagged frames.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no switchport acceptable-frame-type
```

Result

The setting is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the setting with the `switchport acceptable-frame-type` **command.**

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show vlan port config`**command.**

6.1.3.3   switchport access vlan

Description

With this command, you assign an VLAN to an interface and configure the port VLAN identifier (PVID) for it.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`switchport access vlan <vlan-id(1-4094)>`

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

Result

The Interface is added to the VLAN as an untagged port and the corresponding VLAN ID is set.

Further notes

You can reset the setting to the default with the `no switchport access vlan` command.

You display the setting and other information with the `show vlan port config` command.

6.1.3.4   no switchport access vlan

Description

With this command, you reset the setting for the port VLAN identifier (PVID) for an interface to the default value.

The default value is 1.

Requirement

You are in the interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`no switchport access vlan`

Result

The setting is reset to the default value.

Further notes

> You configure the setting with the `switchport access vlan` command.
>
> You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show vlan port config`command.

6.1.3.5 switchport mode

Description

> With this command, you specify the operating mode for the switch port.

Requirement

> - The interface is configured as a switch port.
>
> - You are in the Interface configuration mode.
>   The command prompt is:
>   `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

> Call up the command with the following parameters:
>
> `switchport mode { trunk | hybrid }`
>
> The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`trunk`	Configures the port as a trunk port that only forwards tagged frames. The port can then only be configured as the trunk port if the port is not entered in any VLAN that exchanges untagged frames.	-
	For the trunk port to forward tagged frames, all VLAN IDs to which the trunk port forwards frames must be stored.	
	If a new VLAN is created, the VLAN ID is automatically entered at the trunk port.	
	With a trunk port, the VLAN assignment is dynamic. Static configurations can only be created if, in addition to the trunk port property, the port is also entered statically as a member in the VLANs involved. An example of a static configuration is the assignment of the multicast groups in certain VLANs.	
	If you execute the "`acceptable frame-type all`" command at the trunk port, the port also receives untagged frames.	
`hybrid`	Configures the port as a hybrid port that accepts tagged and untagged frames.	Default: `hybrid`

Result

> The operating mode is configured.

Further notes

You reset the operating mode to the default with the `no switchport mode` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show vlan port config` command.

You configure the interface as a switch port with the `switchport` command.

6.1.3.6 no switchport mode

Description

With this command, you reset the operating mode for the switch port to the default.

The default value is Hybrid.

Requirement

- The interface is configured as a switch port.

- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no switchport mode
```

Result

The setting is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the operating mode with the `switchport mode` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show vlan port config` command.

You configure the interface as a switch port with the `switchport` command.

6.1.3.7 switchport priority default

Description

With this command, you configure the priority default for the interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`switchport priority default <0-7>`

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
–	Value for the priority default	0 ... 7
		Default: 0

Result

The setting for the default priority of the interface is configured.

Further notes

You reset the priority default to the original default with the `no switchport priority default` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show vlan port config` command.

6.1.3.8   no switchport priority default

Description

With this command, you reset the priority default for the interface to the default value.

The default value is 0.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`no switchport priority default`

Result

> The setting is reset to the default value.

Further notes

> You configure the priority default with the `switchport priority default` command.
>
> You display this setting and other information with the `show vlan port config` command.

6.1.3.9 switchport pvid

Description

> With this command, you assign an interface to a VLAN and configure the port VLAN identifier (PVID) for it. If a received frame has no VLAN tag, it has a tag added with the VLAN ID specified here and is sent according to the switch rules for the port.

Requirement

> You are in the Interface configuration mode.
>
> The command prompt is as follows:
>
> `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

> Call up the command with the following parameters:
>
> `switchport pvid <vlan-id(1-4094)>`
>
> The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

Result

> The PVID is configured

Further notes

> You can reset the setting to the default with the `no switchport pvid` command.
>
> You configure the VLAN ID with the `switchport access vlan` command.
>
> You display the setting and other information with the `show vlan port config` command.

6.1.3.10 no switchport pvid

Description

With this command, you reset the setting for the port VLAN identifier (PVID) for an interface to the default value.

The default value is 1.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no switchport pvid
```

Result

The setting is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the setting with the `switchport pvid` command.

You configure the VLAN ID with the `switchport access vlan` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show vlan port config` command.

6.1.4 Commands in the VLAN configuration mode (VLAN Bridge)

This section describes commands that you can call up in the VLAN Configuration mode.

In the Global Configuration mode, enter the `vlan $$$` command to change to this mode. When doing this, you need to replace the `$$$` placeholders with the relevant VLAN ID.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the VLAN Configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the VLAN Configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global Configuration mode.

- If you exit the VLAN Configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

6.1.4.1   name

Description

With this command, you assign a name to the VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the VLAN Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
name <vlan-name>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
vlan-name	Name that will be assigned to the VLAN	max. 32 characters

Result

The VLAN is assigned a name.

Further notes

You delete name assignment for a VLAN with the `no name` command.

6.1.4.2   no name

Description

With this command, you delete the name assignment for a VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the VLAN configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no name
```

Result

The name of the VLAN is deleted.

Further notes

You assign the VLAN a name with the command `name`.

6.1.4.3 ports

Description

With this command, you generate a list that specifies the behavior of the interfaces and replaces the existing VLAN configuration.

- Member Port (tagged port)
  The interface is added permanently to the list of incoming and outgoing connections. Tagged and untagged frames are transferred.

- Untagged Port
  The interface transfers untagged frames. If the VLAN ID (PVID) is set, incoming untagged frames are given a tag with the VLAN ID specified there. Received frames with a VLAN ID are forwarded according to the VLAN ID. With outgoing frames, the tag with the VLAN ID is removed.

- Forbidden Ports
   This interface is not used for communication in a VLAN.

The "tagged port" and "untagged port" you specify with this command are used for outgoing data traffic.

Requirement

You are in the VLAN configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ports
   (
    [<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
    [<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
```

```
      [port-channel<a,b,c-d>]
  )
  [
   untagged<interface-type> <0/a-b,0/c,...>
   (
    [<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
    [port-channel <a,b,c-d>]
    [all]
   )
  ]
  [
   forbidden<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>
   [<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
   [portchannel<a,b,c-d>]
  ]
  [name<vlan-name>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`/a-b,0/c,...`	Port no. of the interface	
`port-channel`	Keyword for a port channel	-
`a,b,c-d`	Port no. of the interface	Enter a valid interface name
`untagged`	Keyword for interfaces or ports that transfer data packets without VLAN marking	-
`all`	Specifies that all interfaces or ports are set to "untagged"	-
`forbidden`	Keyword for forbidden interfaces or ports	-
`name`	Keyword for the name assignment	-
`vlan-name`	Name of the VLAN	max. 32 characters

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The existing VLAN configuration is replaced. To add individual interfaces, you need to recreate the full list.

Further notes

You display details of the function with the `show vlan` command.

You reset the settings with the `no ports` command.

6.1.4.4   no ports

Description

With this command, you remove ports from a VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the VLAN configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no ports
   (
   [<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
   [<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
   [port-channel<a,b,c-d>]
   [all]
   )
   [
   untagged<interface-type> <0/a-b,0/c,...>
   (
    [<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
    [port-channel <a,b,c-d>]
    [all]
   )
   ]
   [
    (
    forbidden<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>
    [<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
    [portchannel<a,b,c-d>]
    [all]
   )
   ]
   [name<vlan-name>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-type`	Type of interface	Enter a valid interface.
`/a-b,0/c,...`	Port no. of the interface	
`port-channel`	Keyword for a port channel	-
`a,b,c-d`	Port no. of the interface	Enter a valid interface.

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`untagged`	Keyword for interfaces or ports that transfer data packets without VLAN marking	-
`all`	Specifies that all interfaces or ports are set to "untagged"	-
`forbidden`	Keyword for forbidden interfaces or ports	-
`name`	Keyword for the name assignment	-
`vlan-name`	Name of the VLAN	max. 32 characters

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The ports are removed from the VLAN configuration.

Further notes

It is possible to remove individual ports from a VLAN configuration without needing to rewrite the entire configuration (in contrast to creating ports because it is not possible to add individual ports later).

You display details of the function with the `show vlan` command.

You configure the setting with the `ports` command.

6.1.4.5   priority

Description

With this command, you assign a priority to the VLAN. The selected priority is entered in all incoming frames of this VLAN. The switch sorts the frame into a queue according to this prioritization .

Requirement

You are in the VLAN Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
priority <prio (0-7)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
prio	Value of the priority	0 ... 7
		Default: 0

Result

The VLAN has been assigned a priority.

Further notes

You reset the priority to the default value with the no priority command.

You enable the priority with the priority-enable command.

You disable the priority with the no priority-enable command.

You display the current priority with the show vlan command.

You configure the assignment of the priority to a queue with the cos-map command.

6.1.4.6   no priority

Description

With this command, you reset the priority of the VLAN back to the default value.

Requirement

You are in the VLAN Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

cli(config-vlan-$$$)#

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

no priority

Result

The priority of the VLAN is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You change the priority with the priority command.

You enable the priority with the priority-enable command.

You disable the priority with the `no priority-enable` command.

You display the current priority with the `show vlan` command.

You configure the assignment of the priority to a queue with the `cos-map` command.

6.1.4.7 priority-enable

Description

With this command, you enable the priority of a VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the VLAN Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
priority-enable
```

Result

The priority of the VLAN is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the priority with the `no priority-enable` command.

You change the priority with the `priority`command.

You reset the priority to the default value with the `no priority` command.

You display the current priority with the `show vlan` command.

6.1.4.8 no priority-enable

Description

With this command, you disable the priority of a VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the VLAN Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no priority-enable
```

Result

The priority of the VLAN is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the priority with the `priority-enable` command.

You change the priority with the `priority`command.

You reset the priority to the default value with the `no priority` command.

You display the current priority with the `show vlan` command.

6.1.5   The "show" commands (Transparent Bridge)

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

6.1.5.1   show dot1d mac-address-table

Description

This command shows the table with the static and dynamic unicast entries and the dynamic multicast entries.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show dot1d mac-address-table [address <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>]
     [{interface <interface-type> <interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	Specify a valid MAC address.
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The entries are displayed.

6.1.5.2 show mac-address-table count

Description

With this command, you show the number of MAC addresses for all or a selected VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show mac-address-table count[vlan<vlan-id(1-4094)>]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the total number of entries is displayed for all VLANs.

Result

The number of MAC addresses for the selected VLAN is displayed.

6.1.5.3 show dot1d mac-address-table static multicast

Description

This command shows the table with the static multicast MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show dot1d mac-address-table static multicast [address <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>]
 [{interface <interface-type> <interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The static multicast MAC addresses are displayed.

6.1.5.4 show dot1d mac-address-table static unicast

Description

This command shows the table with the static unicast MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show dot1d mac-address-table static unicast [address <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>]
 [{interface <interface-type> <interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The static unicast MAC addresses are displayed.

6.1.5.5 show vlan device info

Description

This command shows all the global information that is valid for all VLANs.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show vlan device info
```

Result

The global information is displayed.

6.1.6   Commands in the global configuration mode (Transparent Bridge)

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

6.1.6.1   base bridge-mode

Description

With this command, you configure whether or not the device forwards frames with VLAN tags transparently (IEEE 802.1D/Transparent Bridge) or takes VLAN information into account (IEEE 802.1Q/VLAN Bridge).

Note
Changing base bridge mode

Note the section "Changing base bridge mode". This section describes how a change affects the existing configuration.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
base bridge-mode {dot1d-bridge|dot1q-vlan}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / notes
dot1d-bridge	Sets the mode "Transparent Bridge" for the device. VLAN tags are not taken into account or changed but are forwarded transparently. In this mode, you cannot create any VLANs. Only a management VLAN is available: VLAN 1.	Default setting with PROFINET variants
dot1q-vlan	Sets the mode "VLAN Bridge" for the device. VLAN information is taken into account.	Default setting with Ether-Net/IP variants

Result

The device mode is configured.

Changing base bridge mode

802.1D Transparent Bridge → 802.1Q VLAN Bridge

If you change the Base bridge mode from Transparent Bridge to VLAN Bridge, this has the following effects

● All static and dynamic unicast entries are deleted.

● All static and dynamic multicast entries are deleted.

● With spanning tree you can set the following protocol compatibility: STP, RSTP and MSTP

802.1Q VLAN Bridge → 802.1D Transparent Bridge

If you change the Base bridge mode from VLAN Bridge to Transparent Bridge, this has the following effects

● All VLAN configurations are deleted.

● A management VLAN is created: VLAN 1.

● All static and dynamic unicast entries are deleted.

● All static and dynamic multicast entries are deleted.

● With spanning tree you can set the following protocol compatibility: STP and RSTP

● You cannot use GVRP.

● You cannot use guest VLAN.

● The VLAN assignment cannot be adopted from the RADIUS server.

Further notes

You can display the status of this function and other VLAN information with the `show vlan device info` command.

6.1.6.2 vlan

Description

With this command, you change to the VLAN configuration mode.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
vlan <vlan-id(1-4094)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
vlan-id	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094 In the transparent bridge mode only VLAN 1 is available.

Do not enter any leading zeros with the number of the VLAN.

Result

You are now in the VLAN configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-1)#
```

Further notes

You can display information about the VLAN with the `show vlan device info` command.

6.1.7 Commands in the VLAN configuration mode (Transparent Bridgee)

This section describes commands that you can call up in the VLAN Configuration mode.

In the Global Configuration mode, enter the `vlan $$$` command to change to this mode. When doing this, you need to replace the `$$$` placeholders with the relevant VLAN ID.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the VLAN Configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the VLAN Configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global Configuration mode.

- If you exit the VLAN Configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

6.1.7.1 ip address

Description

With this command, you assign an IP address.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of VLAN.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip address <ip-address> {<subnet-mask>| / <prefix-length(0-32)>}
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ip-address`	IP address	Specify a valid IP address.
`subnet-mask`	Subnet mask	Enter a valid subnet mask.
`prefix-length`	Decimal representation of the mask as a number of "1" bits	0 ... 32

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The IP address is assigned.

Note

Effectiveness of the command

The command is effective immediately. If you configure the interface via which you access the device, the connection will be lost!

Further notes

You delete the setting with the `no ip address` command.

6.1.7.2   no ip address

Description

With this command, you delete the assignment of an IP address and disable DHCP.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of VLAN.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no ip address [{ <ucast_addr> | dhcp }]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ucast-addr`	Value for an IPv4 unicast address	Enter a valid IPv4 unicast address.
`dhcp`	Specify this parameter if you want to disable the DHCP function explicitly.	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

If DHCP was enabled on this interface, DHCP is now disabled. Any existing dynamically learned IP address will be automatically converted to a static IP address.

If static IP addresses were configured and if no explicit IP address was transferred as a parameter, all static IP addresses will be deleted from this interface.

If a static IP address was specified explicitly, this address is deleted from this interface.

Note
Effectiveness of the command

The command is effective immediately.

If you configure the interface via which you access the device, you can lose the connection!

Further notes

You assign an IP address with the `ip address` or `ip address dhcp` command.

6.2 Link aggregation

This section describes commands that configure or manage the bundling of interfaces or connections between devices.

6.2.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

6.2.1.1 show etherchannel

Description

This command shows the settings of the Etherchannel.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show etherchannel [[channel-group-number]
    {detail|load-balance|port|port-channel|summary|protocol}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
channel-group-number	Number of the Channel-Group
detail	Detailed display of the settings
load-balance	Shows which load balancing method is enabled
port	Information on the Etherchannel port
port-channel	Information on the Port-Channel
summary	Brief overview of the settings of a Channel-Group
protocol	Specification of the protocol set for a Channel-Group

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the settings of all channels will be displayed in detail.

Result

The Etherchannel settings are displayed.

6.2.1.2 show interfaces etherchannel

Description

This command shows the interface-specific information for a port channel.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show interfaces[<interface-type><interface-id>]etherchannel`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select an interface, information for all interfaces is displayed.

Result

The interface-specific information for a port channel is displayed.

Note

When a port is assigned to a link aggregation but is not active (e.g. link down), the values displayed may differ from the values configured for the link aggregation.

If the port in the link aggregation becomes active, individual port configurations such as DCP forwarding are overwritten with the configured values of the link aggregation.

6.2.1.3　show lacp

Description

This command shows the information about the settings and information about the ports involved in the link aggregation. The number of sent and received packets is also displayed.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` **or** `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show lacp [<port-channel(1-8)>]{counters|neighbor[detail]}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`port-channel`	Number of the Channel-Group	1 ... 8
`counters`	Shows the values of the counters	-
`neighbor`	Displays information on neighbor ports	-
`detail`	Displays detailed information on neighbor ports	-

If you do not select a port channel, information for all available interfaces is displayed.

Result

The information is displayed.

6.2.2　Commands in the interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In the Global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

● If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.

● If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

6.2.2.1   channel-group

Description

With this command, you add an interface to an Etherchannel.

Requirement

With the `interface po <channel-group-id(1-8)>` command, you have already generated a logical interface for an Etherchannel.

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`channel-group <channel-group-number(1-8)> mode{on|active|passive}`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`channel-group-number`	Number of the Channel-Group	1 ... 8
`on`	Adds the interface without LACP to a Channel-Group. This corresponds to manual bundling.	-
`active`	The negotiation of a connection via LACP is started unconditionally	-
`passive`	The negotiation of a connection via LACP is started when an LACP packet arrives from the connection partner	-

Result

The Etherchannel is configured.

6.2.2.2   no channel-group

Description

With this command, you remove the interface from an Etherchannel.

Requirement

You are in the interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no channel-group
```

Result

The interface is deleted from the Etherchannel.

6.3 Spanning Tree

The Spanning Tree Protocol is used to monitor a LAN for redundant connections. These are blocked and reactivated when necessary if there are changes to the network topology.

This section describes the commands of the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP), the Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) and the Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP).

Note

Avoiding bad configurations

When using the commands in this section, you should take particular care because a bad configuration of this function can have serious negative affects on the network.

6.3.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

6.3.1.1 show spanning-tree

Description

This command shows the settings of the spanning tree function.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show spanning-tree [{summary|blockedports|pathcost method}]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`summary`	Shows a summary
`blockedports`	Shows the blocked ports
`pathcost method`	Shows whether 16-bit (short) or 32 bit (long) values are used in the calculation

Result

The settings for the spanning tree function are displayed.

Further notes

You can show further settings for special aspects of the Spanning Tree Protocol with the following commands:

- `show spanning-tree active`
- `show spanning-tree bridge`
- `show spanning-tree detail`
- `show spanning-tree interface`
- `show spanning-tree root`
- `show spanning-tree mst`

6.3.1.2 show spanning-tree active

Description

This command shows the settings for the active ports of the spanning tree function.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show spanning-tree active [detail]`

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`detail`	Shows settings in detail

Result

The settings for the active ports of the spanning tree function are displayed.

6.3.1.3 show spanning-tree bridge

Description

This command shows the settings of the spanning tree function of the bridge.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show spanning-tree bridge
  [{address|forward-time|hello-time|id|max-age|protocol|priority|detail}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`address`	Shows the MAC address of the bridge
`forward-time`	Shows the time that the bridge is in the listening mode when changing from the blocking mode to the learning mode
`hello-time`	Shows the time after which the bridge sends configuration frames (BPDUs)

Parameter	Description
`id`	Shows the ID of the bridge
`max-age`	Shows the maximum age of the data packet after which it is deleted
`protocol`	Shows the protocol used
`priority`	Shows the priority of the bridge
`detail`	Shows detailed information about the spanning tree settings of the interface

Result

The settings for the spanning tree function of the bridge are displayed.

6.3.1.4   show spanning-tree detail

Description

This command shows the detailed settings of the spanning tree function.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show spanning-tree detail`

Result

The detailed settings for the spanning tree function are displayed.

6.3.1.5   show spanning-tree interface

Description

This command shows the settings of the ports for the spanning tree function.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show spanning-tree interface <interface-type><interface-id>
   [{cost|priority|portfast|rootcost|restricted-role|
     restricted-tcn|state|stats|detail}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
cost	Shows the port costs used to calculate the lowest-cost path.	-
priority	Shows the priority of the port.	-
portfast	Shows whether `spanning-tree port-fast` is enabled.	-
rootcost	Shows the costs of the path to the root bridge.	-
restricted-role	Shows whether `spanning-tree restricted-role` is enabled.	-
restricted-tcn	Shows whether `spanning-tree restricted-tcn` is enabled.	-
state	Shows the status of the interface.	-
stats	Shows the counters of the various BPDU transmissions.	-
detail	Shows detailed information about the spanning tree settings of the interface.	-

For information on identifiers of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The settings of the ports for the spanning tree function are displayed.

6.3.1.6   show spanning-tree interface layer2-gateway-port

Description

This command shows the settings of Layer 2 Gateway Port (L2GP). For example the priority, the MAC address and the status of L2GP are displayed.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show spanning-tree interface
[<interface-type><interface-id>]
layer2-gateway-port
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The settings for Layer 2 Gateway Port (L2GP) are displayed.

6.3.1.7 show spanning-tree mst

Description

This command shows various settings of the spanning tree configuration specific to a Common Internal Spanning Tree (CIST) instance or a selected instance of the Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with one of the following parameter assignments:

```
show spanning-tree mst[<instance-id(1-64)>][detail]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
instance-id	Number of the instance or range of instances whose settings are displayed	1 ... 64
detail	Shows detailed information about the selected interface	-

Result

The settings for the spanning tree configuration are displayed.

Further notes

You display the general settings for the Spanning Tree Protocol with the `show spanning-tree` command.

6.3.1.8 show spanning-tree mst configuration

Description

This command shows various settings for an instance of the Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show spanning-tree mst configuration`

Result

The settings of an instance of the Multiple Spanning Tree protocol are displayed.

Further notes

You display the general settings for the Spanning Tree Protocol with the `show spanning-tree` command.

6.3.1.9 show spanning-tree mst interface

Description

This command shows port-specific settings of a Multiple Spanning Tree configuration.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with one of the following parameter assignments:

```
show spanning-tree mst
   [<instance-id(1-64)>] interface <interface-type><interface-id>
   [{stats|hello-time|detail}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
instance-id	Number of the instance or range of instances whose settings are displayed	1 ... 64
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
stats	Shows the number of incoming and outgoing packets for each path of the interface	-
hello-time	Shows the intervals at which the root switch sends its "Hello" message to the other switches	-
detail	Shows detailed information about the selected interface	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The port-specific settings are displayed.

Further notes

You display the general settings for the Spanning Tree Protocol with the `show spanning-tree` command.

6.3.1.10 show spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility

Description

This command shows whether or not the "Enhanced Passive Listening Compatibility" function is enabled or disabled.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

`show spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility`

Result

The setting for the "Enhanced Passive Listening Compatibility" function is displayed.

Further notes

You enable the "Enhanced Passive Listening Compatibility" function with the `spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility` command.

You disable the "Enhanced Passive Listening Compatibility" function with the `no spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility` command.

6.3.1.11 show spanning-tree root

Description

This command shows the settings of the root bridge for the spanning tree function.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show spanning-tree root
   [{address|cost|forward-time|id|max-age|port|priority|detail}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`address`	Shows the MAC address of the root bridge
`cost`	Shows the costs of the connection to the root bridge.

Parameter	Description
`forward-time`	Shows the time that the bridge is in the listening mode when changing from the blocking mode to the learning mode
`id`	Shows the ID of the root bridge
`max-age`	Shows the maximum age of the data packet after which it is deleted
`port`	Shows the interface via which the spanning tree is set up
`priority`	Shows the priority of the bridge
`detail`	Shows detailed information about the root bridge

Result

The settings of the root bridge for the spanning tree function are displayed.

6.3.2 clear spanning-tree detected protocols

Description

With this command, you restart the protocol transmission process on a specific or on all interfaces and force renegotiation of the connection settings with the neighboring devices.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
clear spanning-tree detected protocols
   [{interface<interface-type><interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the process is restarted for all interfaces.

Result

The connection settings for spanning tree are renegotiated.

6.3.3 clear spanning-tree counters

Description

With this command, you reset all the statistical counters of the spanning tree function at the device and port level.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`clear spanning-tree counters`

Result

The spanning tree counters are reset.

6.3.4 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

6.3.4.1 spanning-tree

Description

The Spanning Tree Protocol is used to monitor a LAN for redundant connections. These are blocked and reactivated when necessary if there are changes to the network topology.

With this command, you enable the spanning tree function.

Requirement

- The ring redundancy is disabled.
- You are in the Global configuration mode.

  The command prompt is as follows:

  ```
  cli(config)#
  ```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
spanning-tree
```

Result

The spanning tree function is enabled.

If you enable Spanning Tree, passive listening is disabled.

Further notes

The default setting of the function with PROFINET variants is "disabled".

The default setting of the function with EtherNet/IP variants is "enabled".

You disable the ring redundancy function with the `no ring-redundancy` command.

You disable the spanning tree function with the `no spanning-tree` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show spanning-tree detail` command.

You can display information about active ports with the `show spanning-tree active` command.

6.3.4.2 no spanning-tree

Description

With this command, you disable the spanning tree function.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no spanning-tree
```

Result

The spanning tree function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the spanning tree function with the `spanning-tree` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show spanning-tree detail`command.

You can display information about active ports with the `show spanning-tree active` command.

6.3.4.3   spanning-tree compatibility

Description

With this command, you configure the compatibility version of the protocol that will be used by the spanning tree function.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
spanning-tree compatibility {stp|rst|mst}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
stp	The version is compatible with the Spanning Tree protocol	-
rst	The version is compatible with the Rapic Spanning Tree protocol	Default: enabled
mst	The version is compatible with the Multiple Spanning Tree protocol	-

Result

The compatibility version of the protocol is selected.

Further notes

With the `no spanning-tree compatibility` command, you can reset the setting to the default value `rst`.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show spanning tree detail` command.

You can display information about active ports with the `show spanning tree active` command.

6.3.4.4 no spanning-tree compatibility

Description

With this command, you reset the compatibility version of the protocol of the spanning tree function to the default value.

The default value is RST.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no spanning-tree compatibility
```

Result

The compatibility version is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the setting with the `spanning-tree compatibility` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show spanning tree detail` command.

6.3.4.5 spanning-tree mst configuration

Description

With this command, you change to the MSTP configuration mode.

Requirement

- MSTP is enabled
- Compatibility mode: MSTP

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
spanning-tree mst configuration
```

Result

You are now in the MSTP configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-mst)#
```

Further notes

You exit the MSTP configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command.

6.3.4.6 spanning-tree mst instance-id root

Description

With this command you specify whether the device is a root bridge (primary) or a substitute root bridge (secondary).

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`spanning-tree mst{instance-id<instance-id(1-64)>}root{primary|secondary}`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`instance-id`	Keyword for the instance	-
`instance-id`	Number of the instance	1 ... 64
`primary`	The priority of the device is set to a low value so that the device can become the root bridge (primary) of the Spanning Tree instance. The lower the value, the higher the priority.	The priority is set to the value 24576.
`secondary`	The priority of the device is set to a low value so that the device becomes the substitute root bridge (secondary) of the Spanning Tree instance. If the root bridge (primary) fails, the substitute root bridge (secondary) takes over the task of the root bridge without delay.	The priority is set to the value 28672.

Result

The function of the device is specified.

Further notes

You disable the root bridge with the `no spanning-tree mst instance-id root` command.

You display this setting and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning tree ....`

6.3.4.7 no spanning-tree mst instance-id root

Description

With this command, you disable the "root bridge" function on the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`no spanning-tree mst{instance-id<instance-id(1-64)>}root`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`instance-id`	Keyword for the instance	-
`instance-id`	Number of the instance	1 ... 64

Result

The "root bridge" function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the root bridge function with the `spanning-tree mst instance-id root` command.

You display this setting and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning tree ....`

6.3.4.8   spanning-tree mst max-hops

Description

With this command, you configure the maximum number of nodes (hops) that a path can run through in an MST.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`spanning-tree mst max-hops <value(6-40)>`

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`value`	Maximum number of hops that a path can run through in an MST	6 ... 40 Default: 20

Result

The setting for the maximum number of hops is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the setting for the maximum number of nodes to the default with the `no spanning-tree mst max-hops` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show spanning tree mst configuration` command.

6.3.4.9 no spanning-tree mst max-hops

Description

With this command, you reset the maximum number of hops that a path in an MST can run through to the default value.

The default value is 20.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`no spanning-tree mst max-hops`

Result

The setting for the maximum number of nodes is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You can configure the setting for the maximum number of nodes with the `spanning-tree mst max-hops` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show spanning tree mst configuration` command.

6.3.4.10 spanning-tree priority

Description

With this command, you configure the priority of the device. Which device becomes the root bridge is decided based on the priority. The bridge with the highest priority becomes the root bridge. The lower the value, the higher the priority.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
spanning-tree[mst <instance-id(1-64)>] priority <value(0-61440)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
mst	Keyword for a Multiple Spanning Tree instance	-
instance-id	Number of the instance	1 ... 64
priority	Keyword for the priority	-
value	Value for the priority	0 ... 61440 Default: 32768

You can only change the value for the priority in the steps of 4096.

Result

The priority of the device is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the setting to the default with the `no spanning-tree priority` command.

You display this setting and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning-tree ....`

6.3.4.11   no spanning-tree priority

Description

With this command, you reset the priority of the device back to the default value.

The default value is 32768.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`no spanning-tree[mst <instance-id(1-64)>]priority`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`mst`	Keyword for a Multiple Spanning Tree instance	-
`instance-id`	Number of the instance	1 ... 64

Result

The priority of the device is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the setting with the `spanning-tree priority` command.

You display this setting and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning-tree ....`

6.3.4.12   spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility

Description

With this command you enable the "Enhanced Passive Listening Compatibility" function.

If you enable the "Enhanced Passive Listening Compatibility" function, the IE switch sends topology change frames via the (R)STP edge port that caused the topology change.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

`spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility`

Result

The "Enhanced Passive Listening Compatibility" function is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the function with the `no spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility` command.

You can display the status of this function with the `show spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility`command.

6.3.4.13 no spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility

Description

With this command you disable the "Enhanced Passive Listening Compatibility" function.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility
```

Result

The "Enhanced Passive Listening Compatibility" function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility` command.

You can display the status of this function with the `show spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility`command.

6.3.4.14   Time settings for the Spanning Tree protocol

spanning-tree (time settings)

Description

With this command, you configure the various time settings of the spanning tree function:

- With the `forward-time` option, you configure the time after which a port changes its spanning tree status from "Blocking" to "Forwarding".

- With the `hello-time` option, you configure the time after which the bridge sends its configuration frames (BPDUs).

- With the `max-age` option, you configure the time after which the information of the BPDUs becomes invalid.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
spanning-tree{forward-time<seconds(4-30)>|hello-time<seconds(1-2)>|
              max-age<seconds(6-40)>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`forward-time`	Keyword for the time after which a port changes its spanning tree status from "Blocking" to "Forwarding"	-
`seconds`	Time after which the changeover takes place	4 ... 30 Default: 15
`hello-time`	Keyword for the time after which the bridge sends its configuration BPDUs	-
`seconds`	Time after which they are sent	1 ... 2 Default: 2
`max-age`	Keyword for the time after which the information of the BPDUs becomes invalid	-
`seconds`	Maximum age of the BPDUs in seconds	6 ... 40 Default: 20

Note

Dependencies when setting the timing

If you specify the time settings for spanning tree, you need to keep to the following two rules:

- 2 * (`forward-time` - 1) ≥ `max-age`
- `max-age` ≥ 2 * (`hello-time` + 1)

Result

The selected setting for the time is configured.

Further notes

You reset the time settings to the default values with the `no spanning-tree forward-time`, `no spanning-tree hello-time` or `no spanning-tree max-age`.

If you call the `no spanning-tree` command without parameters, you disable the spanning tree function. The configured time settings are retained.

If you call the `restart factory` command, the system restarts with the factory configuration settings All rime settings are reset.

You display these settings and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning-tree ...`.

no spanning-tree (time settings)

Description

With this command in conjunction with the relevant parameter you reset the time settings of the spanning tree function to the default values.

If you call the command without parameters, you disable the spanning tree function. The configured time settings are retained.

If you call the `restart factory` command, the system restarts with the factory configuration settings All rime settings are reset.

The default values are as follows:

Parameter	Default value
`forward-time`	15 seconds
`hello-time`	2 seconds
`max-age`	20 seconds

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no spanning-tree{forward-time|hello-time|max-age}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
forward-time	Time after which a port changes its spanning tree status from "Blocking" to "Forwarding"
hello-time	Time after which the bridge sends its configuration frames (BPDUs)
max-age	Time after which the information of the BPDUs becomes invalid

Result

The selected setting for the time is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the time with the `spanning-tree` command (time settings).

You display these settings and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning-tree ....`

6.3.5 Commands in the interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In the Global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

6.3.5.1 spanning-tree

Description

With this command, you configure the various properties of the spanning tree function:

- With the `cost` option, you configure the port costs used to calculate the lowest-cost path.

- With the `disable` option, you disable the interface for the spanning tree function.

- With the `link-type` option, you configure the connection status of the following network segment. The following settings are possible:

    - `point-to-point` – the interface communicates with precisely one network component

    - `shared` - the interface is connected to more than one network component

- With the `portfast` option, you enable the PortFast function on the interface. The interface is connected to an end device and can therefore ignore the waiting time before changing to Forwarding mode.

- With the `port-priority` option, you configure the priority of the interface for negotiating a spanning tree configuration.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
spanning-tree {cost <0-200000000>|disable|
              link-type{point-to-point|shared}|portfast|
              port-priority<0-240>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
cost	Keyword Describes the costs of the port for calculating the lowest cost path.	0 ... 200000000 Default: if dynamic calculation of the path costs is not enabled: • 200000 for physical interfaces • 199999 for port channels
disable	disables the interface for spanning tree	- Default: The spanning tree function is enabled on the interface

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note

`link-type`	Connection status of the following network segment	• `point-to-point`
		• `shared`
		Default:
		• `point-to-point`
		  The connection is configured as `full-duplex`
		• `shared`
		  in all other cases

`portfast`	Enables the PortFast function	- Default: disabled
`port-priority`	Priority of the interface	0 ... 240 in steps of 16 Default: 128

Note
Configure multiple properties

With each call of the command, you can configure precisely one property.
If you want to configure several properties, call the command several times.

Result

The selected property is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the setting to the default with the `no spanning-tree` (properties) command.

You display these settings and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning tree ....`

6.3.5.2   no spanning-tree

Description

With this command, you reset the various properties of the spanning tree function to the default value:

The default values are as follows:

Parameter	Default value
cost	if dynamic calculation of the path costs is not enabled: • 200000 for physical interfaces • 199999 for port channels
disable	The spanning tree function is enabled on the interface
link-type	• point-to-point The connection is configured as full-duplex • shared in all other cases
portfast	disabled
port-priority	128

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no spanning-tree {cost|disable|link-type|portfast|port-priority}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
cost	Keyword for the costs of the port for calculating the lowest-cost path.
disable	Enables the interface for spanning tree.
link-type	Connection status of the following network segment
portfast	Disables the PortFast function.
port-priority	Keyword for the priority of the interface

Note

Configure multiple properties

With each call of the command, you can configure precisely one property.
If you want to configure several properties, call the command several times.

Result

The selected setting was reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the setting with the `spanning-tree` command (properties).

You display these settings and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning tree ....`

6.3.5.3 spanning-tree auto-edge

Description

With this command, you enable automatic discovery of a bridge connected to the interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`spanning-tree auto-edge`

Result

The automatic discovery of a bridge on the interface is enabled.

Further notes

The automatic discovery of a bridge on the interface is disabled with the `no spanning-tree auto-edge` command.

6.3.5.4 no spanning-tree auto-edge

Description

With this command, you disable automatic discovery of a bridge connected to the interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no spanning-tree auto-edge
```

Result

The automatic discovery of a bridge on the interface is disabled.

Further notes

The automatic discovery of a bridge on the interface is enabled with the `spanning-tree auto-edge` command.

6.3.5.5   spanning-tree bpdu-transmit

Description

With this command, you enable or disable the BPDU transmit status at the port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
spanning-tree bpdu-transmit{enabled|disabled}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
enabled	BPDU packets are transmitted at the port	Default: enabled
disabled	BPDU packets are not transmitted at the port	-

Result

The BPDU transmit status has switched over.

Further notes

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show spanning-tree interface` command with the `detail` option.

6.3.5.6 spanning-tree bpdu-receive

Description

With this command, you enable or disable the BPDU receive status at the port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
spanning-tree bpdu-receive{enabled|disabled}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`enabled`	BPDU packets are received at the port	Default: enabled
`disabled`	BPDU packets are ignored at the port	-

Result

The BPDU receive status is enabled or disabled.

Further notes

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show spanning-tree interface` command with the `detail` option.

6.3.5.7 spanning-tree bpdufilter

Description

With this command, you configure the BPDU transmit status for a port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
spanning-tree bpdufilter{disable|enable}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
disable	The transfer of BPDU packets is disabled for the port	Default: disabled
enable	The transfer of BPDU packets is enabled for the port	-

Result

The BPDU transmit status is configured.

6.3.5.8 spanning-tree layer2-gateway-port

Description

With this command, you configure a port as a layer 2 gateway port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
spanning-tree layer2-gateway-port
```

Result

The port is configured as a layer 2 gateway port.

Further notes

You delete the configuration of a port as a layer 2 gateway port with the command `no spanning-tree layer2-gateway-port`.

You can display other information with the `show spanning-tree interface` command with the `detail` option.

6.3.5.9 no spanning-tree layer2-gateway-port

Description

With this command, you delete the configuration of the port as a layer 2 gateway port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no spanning-tree layer2-gateway-port
```

Result

The configuration of the port as a layer 2 gateway port is deleted.

Further notes

You configure a port as a layer 2 gateway port with the command `spanning-tree layer2-gateway-port`.

You can display other information with the `show spanning-tree interface` command with the `detail` option.

6.3.5.10 spanning-tree loop-guard

Description

This function prevents alternative ports or root ports becoming designated ports if there is a disruption of a one-way link.

With this command, you enable the function.

Requirement

- Spanning tree is enabled.

- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  ```
  cli(config-if-$$$)#
  ```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
spanning-tree loop-guard
```

Result

The "Spanning Tree Loop Guard" function is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the setting with the `no spanning-tree loop-guard` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the following commands:

- `show spanning-tree detail`

- `show spanning-tree active detail`

- `show spanning-tree interface`

6.3.5.11 no spanning-tree loop-guard

Description

This function prevents alternative ports or root ports becoming designated ports if there is a disruption of a one-way link.

With this command, you disable the function.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no spanning-tree loop-guard
```

Result

The "Spanning Tree Loop Guard" function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the setting with the `spanning-tree loop-guard` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the following commands:

- `show spanning-tree detail`

- `show spanning-tree active detail`

- `show spanning-tree interface`

6.3.5.12   spanning-tree mst

Description

With this command, you configure the various properties of the Multiple Spanning Tree function:

- With the `cost` option, you configure the port costs used to calculate the lowest-cost path.

- With the `port-priority` option, you configure the priority of the interface for negotiating a Multiple Spanning Tree configuration.

- With the `disable` option, you disable the interface for the Multiple Spanning Tree function.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
spanning-tree mst<instance-id(1-64)>
      {cost(0-200000000)|port-priority (0-240)|disable}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`instance-id`	Number of the addressed instance	1 ... 64
`cost`	Costs of the port for calculating the lowest cost path.	0 ... 200000000 Default: • 200000 for physical interfaces • 199999 for port channels
`port-priority`	Priority of the interface	0 ... 240 in steps of 16 Default: 128
`disable`	Disables the interface for multiple spanning tree	Default: MST is disabled, RST is enabled

Note

Configure multiple properties

With each call of the command, you can configure precisely one property.
If you want to configure several properties, call the command several times.

Result

The selected property is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the setting to the default with the `no spanning-tree mst` (properties) command.

You display these settings and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning tree ....`

6.3.5.13 no spanning-tree mst

Description

With this command, you reset the various properties of the Multiple Spanning Tree function to the default value.

The default values are as follows:

Parameter	Default value
`cost`	• 200000 for physical interfaces • 199999 for port channels
`port-priority`	128
`disable`	MST is disabled, RST is enabled

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no spanning-tree mst<instance-id(1-64)>{cost|port-priority|disable}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`instance-id`	Number of the addressed instance	1 ... 64
`cost`	Keyword for the costs of the port for calculating the lowest-cost path.	-
`port-priority`	Keyword for the priority of the interface	-
`disable`	Enables the interface for multiple spanning tree.	-

Note
Configure multiple properties

With each call of the command, you can configure precisely one property.
If you want to configure several properties, call the command several times.

Result

The selected setting is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the setting with the `spanning-tree mst` command (properties).

You display these settings and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning tree ....`

6.3.5.14 spanning-tree mst hello-time

Description

With this command, you configure the Hello time after which the bridge sends its configuration frames (BPDUs).

A change to this value applies to all MST instances active on this interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
spanning-tree mst hello-time <seconds(1-2)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`seconds`	Time after which the bridge sends its configuration frames (BPDUs)	1 ... 2 Default: 2

Result

The setting for the hello time is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the setting for the hello time to the default with the `no spanning-tree mst hello-time` command.

You display this setting and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning tree ....`

6.3.5.15   no spanning-tree mst hello-time

Description

With this command, you reset the hello time after which the bridge sends its configuration BPDUs to the default value.

The default value is 2 seconds.

Requirement

You are in the interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no spanning-tree mst hello-time
```

Result

The setting for the hello time is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You can configure the setting for the hello time with the `spanning-tree mst hello-time` command.

You display this setting and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning tree ....`

6.3.5.16   spanning-tree mst PseudoRootId

Description

With this command, you configure a pseudoroot MAC address and the priority for a spanning tree configuration. The command is used in conjunction with the layer 2 gateway port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
spanning-tree[mst<instance-id>]pseudoRootId
    priority<value(0-61440)>mac-address<ucast_mac>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
mst	Keyword for a spanning tree instance	-
instance-id	Number of the instance	1 ... 64
priority	Keyword for the priority	-
value	Value for the priority	0 ... 61440 Default: Priority of the device

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`mac-address`	Keyword for the pseudoroot unicast MAC address	-
`ucast_mac`	MAC address of the interface	aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa Default: MAC address of the device

You can only change the value for the priority in the steps of 4096.

Result

The pseudoroot MAC address and the priority are configured.

Further notes

You can reset the settings to the default values with the `no spanning-tree mst pseudoRootId` command.

You display this setting and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning tree ....`

6.3.5.17   no spanning-tree mst PseudoRootId

Description

With this command, you reset a pseudoroot MAC address and the priority of the spanning tree configuration to the default values.

The default values are as follows:

● The priority is configured to the priority of the device.

● The MAC address is configured to the MAC address of the device.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`no spanning-tree[mst<instance-id(1-64)>]pseudoRootId`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
mst	Keyword for a spanning tree instance	-
instance-id	Number of the instance	1 ... 64

Result

The pseudoroot MAC address and the priority are rest to the defaults.

Further notes

You configure the settings with the `spanning-tree mst pseudoRootId` command.

You display this setting and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning tree ....`

6.3.5.18   spanning-tree restricted-role

Description

With this command, you prevent the port adopting the role of root port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`spanning-tree restricted-role`

As default the function is "disabled".

Result

The port is prevented from adopting the role of root port.

Further notes

You cancel the lock with the `no spanning-tree restricted-role` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show spanning-tree detail` command.

6.3.5.19 no spanning-tree restricted-role

Description

With this command, you release the port for the role as root port.

Requirement

You are in the interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no spanning-tree restricted-role
```

Result

The port is released for the role of root port.

Further notes

You prevent the port adopting the role of the root port with the `spanning-tree restricted-role` command.

6.3.5.20 spanning-tree restricted-tcn

Description

With this command, you restrict the port for the Topology Change Notification (TCN) function. The port cannot initiate any modifications to the network topology.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
spanning-tree restricted-tcn
```

Result

The port is prevented from using the TCN function.

Further notes

You cancel the lock with the `no spanning-tree restricted-tcn` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show spanning-tree detail` command.

6.3.5.21 no spanning-tree restricted-tcn

Description

With this command, you release the port for the TCN function.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no spanning-tree restricted-tcn
```

Result

The port is released for the TCN function.

Further notes

You restrict the port for the TCN function with the `spanning-tree restricted-tcn` command.

6.3.6 Commands in the MSTP configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the MSTP configuration mode.

In the Global configuration mode, enter the `spanning-tree mst configuration` command to change to this mode.

- If you exit the MSTP configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the MSTP configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

6.3.6.1 instance

Description

With this command, you assign a range of VLANs to an MST instance.

Requirement

You are in the MSTP configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-mst)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
instance <instance-id(1-64)> vlan <vlan-range>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`instance-id`	Number of the instance	1 ... 64 You can define up to 16 MSTP instances. Default: The VLANs 1 – 4094 are as-signed to instance "0"
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-range`	Range of VLANs assigned to an in-stance	enter the range limts with a hy-phen or blank

Result

The range of VLANs is assigned to the MST instance.

Further notes

You cancel the assignment of the VLAN to an MST instance with the `no instance` command.

You delete the MST instance with the `no instance` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show spanning-tree mst configuration` command.

6.3.6.2 no instance

Description

With this command, you cancel the assignment of a VLAN to an MST instance or delete the MST instance.

Requirement

You are in the MSTP Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-mst)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no instance <instance-id (1-64)> [vlan <vlan-range>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`instance-id`	Number of the MST instance	1 ... 64
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-range`	Range of VLANs that will be deleted from the instance	enter the range limts with a hyphen or blank

If you specify a VLAN or a VLAN range, the assignment to an MST instance is canceled.

If you do not specify a VLAN, the MST instance is deleted.

Result

The assignment of a VLAN to an MST instance is canceled or the MST instance is deleted.

Further notes

You assign a VLAN to an MST instance with the `instance` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show spanning-tree mst configuration` command.

6.3.6.3 name

Description

With this command, you configure a name for the MST region.

Requirement

You are in the MSTP Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-mst)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
name <region-name>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`region-name`	Name of the MST region	max. 32 characters

The default value of the name is the MAC address of the device.

Result

The name is configured.

Further notes

You delete the name of the MST region with the `no name` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show spanning tree mst configuration` command.

6.3.6.4 no name

Description

With this command, you reset the name for the MST region to the default value.

The default value is:

- The MAC address of the device is configured as name.

Requirement

You are in the MSTP Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-mst)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no name
```

Result

The name is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the name of the MST region with the `name` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show spanning tree mst configuration` command.

6.3.6.5 revision

Description

With this command, you assign a revision number to the MST region.

Requirement

You are in the MSTP Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-mst)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
revision <revision-no(0-65535)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`revision-no`	Value of the revision number	0 ... 65535
		Default: 0

Result

The MST region is assigned a revision number.

Further notes

You delete a revision number with the `no revision` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show spanning tree mst configuration` command.

6.3.6.6   no revision

Description

With this command, you reset the revision number of the MST region to the default value.

The default value is 0.

Requirement

You are in the MSTP Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-mst)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`no revision`

Result

The revision number of the MST region is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You assign a revision number to the MST region with the `revision` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show spanning tree mst configuration` command.

6.4   Passive Listening

This section describes commands of the passive listening function.

If you enable passive listening, the IE switch forwards (R)STP configuration frames (BPDUs) transparently even when (R)STP is disabled for it. The IE switch also reacts to topology change frames. When the IE switch receives a TC frame, it deletes the MAC address table.

6.4.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

6.4.1.1 show passive-listening

Description

This command shows whether or not "passive listening" is enabled.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show passive-listening`

Result

`disabled` is displayed if "passive listening" is disabled. If "passive listening" is enabled, `enabled` is displayed.

6.4.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

6.4.2.1 passive-listening bpdu-vlan-flood

Description

With this command you enable forwarding of BPDUs for specific VLANs; in other words to all ports that are members of a VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
passive-listening bpdu-vlan-flood
```

As default the function is "enabled".

Result

BPDUs for specific VLANs.

Further notes

You disable this function with the `no passive-listening bpdu-vlan-flood` command.

You display the status of "passive listening" with the `show passive-listening` command.

6.4.2.2 no passive-listening bpdu-vlan-flood

Description

With this command you enable the flooding of BPDUs to all available ports of the device regardless of the configured VLANs.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no passive-listening bpdu-vlan-flood
```

Result

BPDUs are flooded to all available ports.

Further notes

You enable this function with the `passive-listening bpdu-vlan-flood` command.

You display the status of "passive listening" with the `show passive-listening` command.

6.4.2.3 passive-listening

Description

This command enables "passive listening".

Requirement

Note

No simultaneous operation with spanning tree

"Passive listening" can only be enabled when spanning tree is disabled.

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
passive-listening
```

Result

The "passive listening" function is enabled.

Further notes

You disable "passive listening" with the `no passive-listening` command.

You display the status of "passive listening" with the `show passive-listening` command.

6.4.2.4 no passive-listening

Description

This command disables "passive listening".

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no passive-listening
```

Result

The "passive listening" function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable "passive listening" with the `passive-listening` command.

You display the status of "passive listening" with the `show passive-listening` command.

Network protocols

7

This part contains the sections that describe the commands for working with the various network protocols.

7.1 IPv4 protocol

This section describes commands of the Internet Protocol (IP) version 4.

7.1.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

7.1.1.1 show ip gateway

Description

This command shows the default gateway configured for the device.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show ip gateway`

Result

The default gateway is displayed.

7.1.1.2 show ip telnet

Description

This command shows the admin status and the port number of the Telnet server.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show ip telnet
```

Result

The admin status and the port number of the Telnet server are displayed.

7.1.1.3 show dcp server

Description

This command shows whether or not the DCP function is enabled on the device.

If the DCP function is enabled, the read and write permissions are displayed.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show dcp server
```

Result

The overview of the status of the DCP function and access rights is displayed.

7.1.1.4   show dcp forwarding

Description

This command shows an overview of the DCP forwarding behavior on one or all interfaces.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show dcp forwarding [port<interface-type><interface-id>]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`port`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The overview of the DCP forwarding behavior is displayed.

7.1.2   Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

7.1.2.1 ip gateway

Description

With this command, you configure the default gateway.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip gateway <gateway>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values
gateway	Specifies the IP address of the gateway	enter a valid IP address

Result

The entry is configured.

Further notes

You delete the default gateway with the `no ip gateway` command.

You show the default gateway with the `show ip gateway` command.

7.1.2.2 no ip gateway

Description

With this command, you delete the default gateway.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no ip gateway <gateway>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values
gateway	Specifies the IP address of the gateway.	Specify a valid IP address.

Result

The entry is deleted.

Further notes

You configure the default gateway with the `ip gateway` command.

You show the default gateway with the `show ip gateway` command.

7.1.2.3 ip echo-reply

Description

To check the availability of a network node, packets of the Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) can be sent to it. These packets of type 8 request the recipient to send a packet back to the sender (echo reply).

With this command you enable the network node to react to ping queries.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ip echo-reply
```

Result

"ICMP echo reply messages" are enabled. The network node reacts to ping queries.

Further notes

You disable the setting with the `no ip echo-reply` command.

7.1.2.4 no ip echo-reply

Description

With this command you stop the network node reacting to ping queries.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`no ip echo-reply`

Result

"ICMP echo reply messages" are disabled. The network node does not react to ping queries.

Further notes

You change the setting with the `ip echo-reply` command.

7.1.2.5 telnet-server

Description

With this command, you enable the Telnet server.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
telnet-server
```

As default the function is "enabled".

Result

The Telnet server is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the Telnet server with the `no telnet-server` command.

7.1.2.6 no telnet-server

Description

With this command, you disable the Telnet server.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no telnet-server
```

Result

The Telnet server is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the Telnet server with the `telnet-server` command.

7.1.2.7   dcp server

Description

With this command, you configure the read and write permissions for the DCP server and enable it.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
dcp server {read-only|read-write}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
read-only	only reading is permitted on the DCP server	-
read-write	reading and writing is permitted on the DPC server	Default: read-write

Result

The read and write permissions for the DPC server are configured.

The DCP server is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the DCP server with the `no dcp server` command.

7.1.2.8   no dcp server

Description

With this command, you disable the DCP server.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no dcp server
```

Result

The DCP server is disabled.

Further notes

You enable and configure the DCP server with the `dcp server` command.

7.1.3 Commands in the interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In the Global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

● If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.

● If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

7.1.3.1 dcp forwarding

Description

With this command, you configure the forwarding behavior of the interface for DCP frames.

Note
PROFINET configuration

Since DCP is a PROFINET protocol, the configuration created here is only effective with the VLAN associated with the TIA interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
dcp forwarding {block|forward}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
block	DCP frames are discarded	-
forward	DCP frames are forwarded	Default: forward

Result

The forwarding behavior of the interface for DCP frames is configured.

7.1.3.2 ip address

Description

With this command, you assign an IP address.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of VLAN.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip address <ip-address> {<subnet-mask>| / <prefix-length(0-32)>}
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
ip-address	IP address	Specify a valid IP address.
subnet-mask	Subnet mask	Enter a valid subnet mask.
prefix-length	Decimal representation of the mask as a number of "1" bits	0 ... 32

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The IP address is assigned.

Note
Effectiveness of the command

The command is effective immediately. If you configure the interface via which you access the device, the connection will be lost!

Further notes

You delete the setting with the `no ip address` command.

7.1.3.3 no ip address

Description

With this command, you delete the assignment of an IP address and disable DHCP.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of VLAN.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no ip address [{ <ucast_addr> | dhcp }]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
ucast-addr	Value for an IPv4 unicast address	Enter a valid IPv4 unicast address.
dhcp	Specify this parameter if you want to disable the DHCP function explicitly.	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

If DHCP was enabled on this interface, DHCP is now disabled. Any existing dynamically learned IP address will be automatically converted to a static IP address.

If static IP addresses were configured and if no explicit IP address was transferred as a parameter, all static IP addresses will be deleted from this interface.

If a static IP address was specified explicitly, this address is deleted from this interface.

Note

Effectiveness of the command

The command is effective immediately.

If you configure the interface via which you access the device, you can lose the connection!

Further notes

You assign an IP address with the `ip address` or `ip address dhcp` command.

7.1.3.4   ip address dhcp

Description

With this command, the VLAN interface obtains the IP address via DHCP.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of VLAN.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-if-vlan-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`ip address dhcp`

Result

The DHCP assigns the IP address to the VLAN interface.

Further notes

You delete the settings with the `no ip address` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show ip interface` command.

7.2 DHCP client

This section describes commands of the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP).

7.2.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

7.2.1.1 show ip dhcp client stats

Description

With this command, you display the statistical counters of the DHCP client.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show ip dhcp client stats`

Result

The counters are displayed.

7.2.1.2 show ip dhcp client

Description

With this command, you display the configuration settings of the DHCP client.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show ip dhcp client
```

Result

The configuration settings of the DHCP client are displayed.

7.2.2   Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

7.2.2.1   ip dhcp config-file-request

Description

If the DHCP config file request option is set, the device requests the TFTP address and the name of a configuration file from the DHCP server. If the device is restarted following the completed download, the configuration settings are read from this file.

With this command, you enable the DHCP config file request option.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ip dhcp config-file-request
```

Result

The DHCP config file request option is enabled.

Further notes

> You disable the DHCP config file request option with the `no ip dhcp config-file-request` command.

7.2.2.2 no ip dhcp config-file-request

Description

> With this command, you disable the DHCP config file request option.

Requirement

> You are in the Global configuration mode.
>
> The command prompt is as follows:
>
> `cli(config)#`

Syntax

> Call the command without parameters:
>
> `no ip dhcp config-file-request`

Result

> The DHCP config file request option is disabled.

Further notes

> You enable the DHCP config file request option with the `ip dhcp config-file-request` command.

7.2.2.3 ip dhcp client mode

Description

> With this command, you configure the type of identifier with which the DHCP client logs on with its DHCP server.

Requirement

> You are in the Global configuration mode.
>
> The command prompt is as follows:
>
> `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`ip dhcp client mode {mac|client-id<client-id>|sysname|pnio-name-of-station}`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`mac`	The client registers with its MAC address	-
`client-id`	The client registers with the assigned ID	-
`client-id`	Name of the assigned ID	max. 32 characters
`sysname`	The client registers with the assigned system name	-
`pnio-name-of-station`	The client logs in with the PROFINET name. The name is assigned with the PST tool.	-

Result

The registration mode of the DHCP client is configured.

7.2.3   Commands in the Interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In the Global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

● If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.

● If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

7.2.3.1   ip address dhcp

Description

With this command, you assign an IP address using DHCP.

Requirement

You are in the VLAN configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-vlan-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
ip address dhcp
```

Result

The IP address is assigned using DHCP.

Further notes

You delete the setting with the `no ip address` command.

7.2.3.2 no ip address

Description

With this command, you delete the assignment of an IP address and disable DHCP.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of VLAN.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no ip address [{ <ucast_addr> | dhcp }]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ucast-addr`	Value for an IPv4 unicast address	Enter a valid IPv4 unicast address.
`dhcp`	Specify this parameter if you want to disable the DHCP function explicitly.	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

If DHCP was enabled on this interface, DHCP is now disabled. Any existing dynamically learned IP address will be automatically converted to a static IP address.

If static IP addresses were configured and if no explicit IP address was transferred as a parameter, all static IP addresses will be deleted from this interface.

If a static IP address was specified explicitly, this address is deleted from this interface.

Note

Effectiveness of the command

The command is effective immediately.

If you configure the interface via which you access the device, you can lose the connection!

Further notes

You assign an IP address with the `ip address` or `ip address dhcp` command.

7.3 DHCP server

This section describes commands relevant for configuring the DHCP server.

Requirement

The connected devices are configured so that they obtain the IPv4 address from a DHCP server.

7.3.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

7.3.1.1 show ip dhcp-server bindings

Description

This command shows the current assignments of IPv4 addresses of the DHCP server.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
show ip dhcp-server bindings
```

Result

> The information is displayed.

7.3.1.2   show ip dhcp-server pools

Description

> The command shows the DHCP server configuration of a specific IPv4 address band or all IPv4 address bands.

Requirement

> You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.
>
> The command prompt is as follows:
>
> `cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

> Call up the command with the following parameters:
>
> `show ip dhcp-server pools [pool-id (1-24)]`
>
> The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`pool-id`	ID of the addressed IPv4 address band	1 ... 24

> If no parameters are specified, the settings for all address bands are displayed.

Result

> The configuration of the DHCP server is displayed.

7.3.2   Commands in the global configuration mode

> This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.
>
> In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.
>
> Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.
>
> You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

7.3.2.1 ip dhcp-server

Description

With this command, you enable the DHCP server on the device.

Note

To avoid conflicts with IPv4 addresses, only one device may be configured as a DHCP server in the network.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

`ip dhcp-server`

Result

The DHCP server is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the DHCP server with the `no ip dhcp-server` command.

7.3.2.2 no ip dhcp-server

Description

With this command, you disable the DHCP server on the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no ip dhcp-server
```

Result

The DHCP server is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the DHCP server with the `ip dhcp-server` command.

7.3.2.3   ip dhcp-server icmp-probe

Description

With this command you enable the function "Probe address with ICMP echo before offer". The DHCP server checks whether or not the IPv4 address has already been assigned. If no reply is received, the DHCP server can assign the IPv4 address.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
ip dhcp-server icmp-probe
```

Result

The function is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the function with the `no ip dhcp-server icmp-probe` command.

7.3.2.4 no ip dhcp-server icmp-probe

Description

With this command you disable the function "Probe address with ICMP echo before offer".

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

`no ip dhcp-server icmp-probe`

Result

The function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `ip dhcp-server icmp-probe` command.

7.3.2.5 ip dhcp-server pool

Description

With this command, you have three options of changing to the DHCPPOOL configuration mode and to assign an interface to the IPv4 address band.

1. If you call the command `ip dhcp-server pool` with the parameter `pool-id (1-24)`, you change to the corresponding DHCPPOOL configuration mode. The corresponding pool ID must have already been created.

2. If you call the `ip dhcp-server pool` command with the parameter `vlan` or `interface-type/interface-id`, an IPv4 address band with the next free pool ID is created and the specified interface assigned directly to it. This is followed by a change to the DHCPPOOL configuration mode. You then configure the other settings in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

3. If you call the `ip dhcp-server pool` command without parameters, and IPv4 address band with the next free pool ID is created and you change directly to the corresponding DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

   You then configure the interface and the other settings in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip dhcp-server pool [{ <pool-id (1-24)> | [{ vlan <vlan-id (1-4094)> | <interface-
type> <interface-id> }]}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
pool-id	ID of the addressed IPv4 address band	1 ... 24
vlan	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
vlan-id	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
interface-type	Type of interface	Specify a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on identifiers of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The ID of the addressed IPv4 address band is configured.

You are now in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Further notes

You exit the DHCPPOOL configuration mode with the exit command.

You delete the entry with the no ip dhcp-server pool command.

7.3.2.6   no ip dhcp-server pool

Description

With this command, you delete the required IPv4 address band.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no ip dhcp-server pool <pool-id (1-24)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`pool-id`	ID of the addressed IPv4 address band	1 ... 24

Result

The required IPv4 address band is deleted.

Further notes

You create an IPv4 address band with the `ip dhcp-server pool`command.

7.3.3   Commands in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the DHCPPOOL Configuration mode.

In the Global Configuration mode, enter the `ip dhcp-server pool` command to change to this mode.

- If you exit the DHCPPOOL Configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global Configuration mode.

- If you exit the DHCPPOOL Configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

7.3.3.1   lease-time

Description

With this command, you specify how long the assigned IPv4 address remains valid. When half the period of validity has elapsed. the DHCP client can extend the period of the assigned IPv4 address. When the entire time has elapsed, the DHCP client needs to request a new IPv4 address.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
lease-time <seconds (60-31536000)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
seconds	Time until renewal of the assigned IPv4 address in seconds	60 ... 31536000

Result

The time is configured.

Further notes

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp-server pools` command.

7.3.3.2 network

Description

With this command you configure the IPv4 address band from which the DHCP client receives any IPv4 address.

Note

Assignment of IP addresses

The requirement for the assignment is that the IPv4 address of the interface is located within the IPv4 address band. If this is not the case, the interface does not assign any IPv4 addresses

---

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
network <lower-IP> <upper-IP> { <subnet-mask> | / <prefix-length (1-32)> }
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
lower-IP	Start of the IPv4 address band	Enter a valid IPv4 address.
upper-IP	End of the IPv4 address band	Enter a valid IPv4 address.
subnet-mask	Subnet mask of the corresponding subnet	Enter a valid subnet mask
prefix-length	Decimal representation of the mask as a number of "1" bits	1 ... 32

Result

The IPv4 address band is configured. The DHCP options 1, 3, 6, 66 and 67 are created automatically. With the exception of option 1, the options can be deleted.

Further notes

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp-server pools` command.

You assign an IP address to an interface with the `set interface` command.

You configure the DHCP option 67 with the `option value-string` command.

You configure the DHCP options 3, 6 and 66 with the `option` command.

You delete the DHCP option with the `no option` command.

7.3.3.3   Option (IP address)

Description

With this command you configure the DHCP options 3, 6 and 66 that contain an IPv4 address as DHCP parameter. The DHCP options 3, 6 and 66 are created automatically when the IPv4 address band is created.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
option <option-code> { <ip-address-list> | int-ip }
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`option-code`	Code of the DHCP option	• 3 - Default gateway • 6 - DNS server • 66 - TFTP server

`ip-adress-list`	IPv4 address or IPv4 address list	• DHCP option 3 (default gateway):
		  Enter the DHCP parameter as an IPv4 address, e.g. 192.168.100.2.
		• DHCP option 6 (name server):
		  Enter the DHCP parameter as an IPv4 address, e.g. 192.168.100.2. You can specify up to three IPv4 addresses separated by commas.
		• DHCP option 66 (TFTP Server):
		  Enter the DHCP parameter as an IPv4 address, e.g. 192.168.100.2.

`int-ip`	Uses IPv4 address of the interface that is assigned to the IPv4 address band.	-

Result

The DHCP option is created.

Further notes

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp-server pools` command.

You disable the IPv4 address band with the `no pool-enable` command.

You delete the DHCP option with the `no option` command.

You configure the DHCP option 67 with the `option value-string` command.

You configure the interface with the `set interface` command.

7.3.3.4 option value-string

Description

With this command you configure DHCP options 12 and 67 that contain a string as DHCP parameter. The DHCP option 67 is created automatically when the IPv4 address band is created.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
option <option-code> value-string <dhcp-param>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`option-code`	Code of the DHCP option	• 12 - Host name • 67 - Bootfile name
`dhcp-param`	Name of the file	Enter the name in the string format.

Result

The DHCP option is configured.

Further notes

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp-server pools` command.

You delete the DHCP option with the `no option` command.

You configure the DHCP options 3, 6 and 66 with the `option` (IP address) command.

You disable the IPv4 address band with the `no pool-enable` command.

7.3.3.5   no option

Description

With this command, you delete the DHCP option with the specified number.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no option <option-code>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`option-code`	Code of the DHCP option	Enter a valid DHCP option code.

Result

The specified DHCP option is deleted.

Further notes

You configure the DHCP option 67 with the `option value-string` command.

You configure the DHCP options 3, 6 and 66 with the `option` command.

You configure all other DHCP options with the `option value-hex` command.

7.3.3.6 pool-enable

Description

With this command you specify that this IPv4 address band will be used.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
pool-enable
```

Result

The setting is enabled.

Note

If the IPv4 address band is enabled, DHCP options (option ...) and static assignments (static leases) can no loner be edited.

Further notes

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp-server pools` command.

You disable the setting with the `no pool-enable` command.

7.3.3.7   no pool-enable

Description

With this command you specify that this IPv4 address band will not be used.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no pool-enable
```

Result

The setting is disabled.

Further notes

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp-server pools` command.

You enable the setting with the `pool-enable` command.

7.3.3.8   ports

Description

With this command you enable the ports via which the IPv4 addresses of an address band in the local subnet are assigned.

After you have created an IPv4 address band, all ports are selected that are currently located in the corresponding VLAN. If you add ports to the VLAN later, these ports are not automatically enabled.

With address assignments via a relay agent, you cannot restrict the ports.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ports [<interface-type> <0/a-b, 0/c, ...>] [<interface-type> <0/a-b, 0/c, ...>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`0/a-b,0/c,...`	Port no. of the interface	

For information on identifiers of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The selected ports will be enabled. Before the IPv4 address band can be used, it still needs to be activated.

Further notes

You disable the ports with the `no ports` command.

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp-server pools` command.

You enable the IPv4 address band with the `pool-enable` command.

7.3.3.9   no ports

Description

With this command you disable the ports via which the IPv4 addresses of an address band in the local subnet are assigned.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no ports [<interface-type> <0/a-b, 0/c, ...>] [<interface-type> <0/a-b, 0/c, ...>]
[all]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`0/a-b,0/c,...`	Port no. of the interface	
`all`	All ports will be disabled.	-

For information on identifiers of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The selected ports will be disabled.

Further notes

You enable the ports with the `ports` command.

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp-server pools` command.

You enable the IPv4 address band with the `pool-enable` command.

7.3.3.10   relay-information

Description

With this command you define that devices with a certain remote ID and circuit ID are assigned the IPv4 addresses from a specific address band.

If you create such an entry for an address band, address pool only reacts to DHCP queries via a DHCP relay agent (option 82). You can create further address bands for the same VLAN IP interfaces so that the pools react to different requests.

Note

Extension or release of an IPv4 address assigned via a relay agent.

With address assignments via a relay agent "Renew" and "Release" messages going directly from the client to the server are ignored by the server.

- The extension of the period for an IPv4 address assigned via a relay agent is achieved using a "Rebinding" message that the client sends automatically as a broadcast.
- To speed up the release of an IPv4 address assigned via a relay agent, configure a shorter period of validity with the `lease-time` command.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
relay-information <remote-id> <circuit-id>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`remote-id`	Remote ID of the device	Enter the remote ID of the device.
`circuit-id`	Circuit ID of the device.	Enter the circuit ID of the device.

Result

Devices with a certain remote ID and circuit ID are assigned the IPv4 addresses from a specific address band. Before the IPv4 address band can be used, it still needs to be activated.

Further notes

You cancel the assignment with the `no relay-information` command.

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp relay information` command.

You enable the IPv4 address band with the `pool-enable` command.

7.3.3.11 no relay-information

Description

With this command you cancel the assignment of devices with a certain remote ID and circuit ID to IPv4 addresses from a specific address band.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`no relay-information <remote-id> <circuit-id>`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
remote-id	Remote ID of the device	Enter the remote ID of the device.
circuit-id	Circuit ID of the device.	Enter the circuit ID of the device.

Result

The assignment is canceled.

Further notes

With the `relay-information` command, you assign devices with a certain remote ID and circuit IPv4 addresses from a specific address band.

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp relay information` command.

You enable the IPv4 address band with the `pool-enable` command.

7.3.3.12   set-interface

Description

With this command, you specify the interface via which the IPv4 addresses are dynamically assigned.

The requirement for the assignment is that the IPv4 address of the interface is located within the IPv4 address band. If this is not the case, the interface does not assign any IPv4 addresses.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`set-interface {vlan <vlan-id (1-4094)> | <interface-type> <interface-id> }`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
vlan	Keyword for a VLAN connection.	-
vlan-id	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on identifiers of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The interface is assigned. Before the IPv4 address band can be used, it still needs to be activated.

Further notes

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp-server pools` command.

You enable the IPv4 address band with the `pool-enable` command.

7.3.3.13   static-lease

Description

With this command you specify that devices with a certain MAC address are assigned to the selected IPv4 address.

Requirement

- The assignment has not yet been created.
- You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

  The command prompt is as follows:

  ```
  cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
  ```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
static-lease {mac <mac-address> | client-id <string>} <ip-address>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`mac`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`mac-address`	Unicast MAC address	Specify the MAC address. aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff
`client-id`	Keyword for a DHCP client ID	-
`string`	Freely definable DHCP client ID	Enter the required designation.
`ip-address`	Unicast IPv4 address	Enter a valid IPv4 address. The IPv4 address must match the subnet of the IPv4 address band.

Result

The assignment is specified.

Further notes

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp dhcp-server bindings` command.

You disable the IPv4 address band with the `no pool-enable` command.

You delete the assignment with the `no static-lease` command.

7.3.3.14 no static-lease

Description

With this command, you delete the assignment of an IPv4 address to a MAC address.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`no static-lease { mac <mac-address> | client-id <string> }`

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`mac`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`mac-address`	Unicast MAC address	Specify the MAC address. aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff
`client-id`	Keyword for a DHCP client ID	-
`string`	Freely definable DHCP client ID	Enter the required designation.

Result

The assignment is deleted.

Further notes

You configure the assignment with the `static-lease` command.

7.4 DHCP Relay

This section describes commands for the DHCP Relay Agent.

7.4.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

7.4.1.1 show dhcp server

Description

With this command, you display the IP addresses of the DHCP servers to which the device forwards the frames.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode or in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#` or `cli(config)#`

Syntax

  Call the command without parameters:

  `show dhcp server`

Result

  The IP addresses of the DHCP servers are displayed.

Further notes

  With the "`ip dhcp server`" command, you specify the IP addresses.

7.4.1.2   show ip dhcp relay information

Description

  This command displays the DHCP relay agent settings for all or for a selected VLAN.

Requirement

  You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode or in the Global configuration mode.

  The command prompt is as follows:

  `cli>` or `cli#` or `cli(config)#`

Syntax

  Call up the command with the following parameters:

  `show ip dhcp relay information [vlan <vlan-id>]`

  The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
vlan	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
vlan-id	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

  If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

  For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

  The configuration settings are displayed.

SCALANCE XB-200/XP-200 Command Line Interface

276   Configuration Manual, 05/2016, C79000-G8976-C361-03

7.4.2 Commands in the Global Configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

7.4.2.1 ip dhcp server

Description

With this command, you specify the IP addresses of the DHCP servers to which the DHCP relay agent forwards the frames. You can specify up to four IP addresses for the DHCP relay agent.

Requirement

● You are in the Global configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`ip dhcp server <ip address>`

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ip address`	IPv4 address of the DHCP server	enter a valid IP address

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The IP address is specified.

Further notes

You remove the IP address with the `no ip dhcp server` command.

You enable the DHCP Relay Agent with the `service dhcp-relay` command.

You display the IP addresses with the `show dhcp server` command.

You display the settings with the `show ip dhcp relay information` command.

7.4.2.2 no ip dhcp server

Description

With this command, you delete the IP address of the DHCP server.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no ip dhcp server <ip address>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ip address`	IP address of the DHCP server	Enter the IP address to be deleted.

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The IP address is removed.

Further notes

You enable the DHCP Relay Agent with the `service dhcp-relay` command.

You create the IP address with the `ip dhcp server` command.

You display the IP addresses with the `show dhcp server` command.

7.4.2.3 ip dhcp relay circuit-id option

Description

The Circuit ID is a sub option of the "DHCP Relay Information" option. The Circuit ID contains information about the origin of the DHCP packet.

With this command, you specify the information contained in the Circuit ID.

The Circuit ID is encoded in the DHCP packet if the "DHCP relay information" option is enabled.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip dhcp relay circuit-id option [router-index] [vlanid] [recv-port]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
router-index	The router index is added to the Circuit ID.	Default setting
vlanid	The VLAN ID is added to the Circuit ID.	-
recv-prot	The Circuit ID is added to the receiving port.	-

Result

The content of the Circuit ID is specified.

Further notes

You enable the DHCP Relay Information option with the `ip dhcp relay information option` command.

You display the information with the `show ip dhcp relay information` command.

7.4.2.4 ip dhcp relay information option

Description

With this command, you enable the "IP DHCP Relay Information" option. If the option is enabled, prior to forwarding to the DHCP server, information about the origin of the DHCP query is encoded in the packet. If the DHCP server sends a response, the information is removed again before forwarding to the DHCP client.

This information is only encoded in the data packet if the DHCP relay agent is enabled.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode or in the Interface configuration mode of VLAN.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)# or cli(config-if-$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
ip dhcp relay information option
```

Result

The option is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the option with the `no ip dhcp relay information option` command.

You enable the DHCP Relay Agent with the `service dhcp-relay` command.

You configure the content of the information with the `ip dhcp relay circuit-id option` command.

You can display the status of this option and other information with the `show ip dhcp relay information` command.

7.4.2.5 no ip dhcp relay information option

Description

With this command, you disable the "IP DHCP Relay Information" option.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode or in the Interface configuration mode of VLAN.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#` or `cli(config-if-$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no ip dhcp relay information option
```

Result

The option is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the option with the `ip dhcp relay information option` command.

You can display the status of this option and other information with the `show ip dhcp relay information` command.

7.4.2.6   service dhcp-relay

Description

With this command, you enable the DHCP relay agent on the device. The DHCP relay agent forwards DHCP queries to DHCP servers located in a different subnet.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
service dhcp-relay
```

Result

The DHCP Relay Agent is activated.

Further notes

You disable the DHCP Relay Agent with the `no service dhcp-relay` command.

You create the IP addresses of the DHCP server with the `ip dhcp server` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ip dhcp relay information` command.

7.4.2.7   no service dhcp-relay

Description

This command disables the DHCP relay agent.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no service dhcp-relay
```

Result

The DHCP Relay Agent is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the DHCP Relay Agent with the `service dhcp-relay` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ip dhcp relay information` command.

7.4.3   Commands in the Interface Configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Interface Configuration mode of VLAN.

In the global configuration mode, enter the `interface vlan $$$` command to change to this mode. When doing this, you need to replace the `$$$` placeholders with the relevant VLAN ID.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Interface Configuration mode of VLAN can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface Configuration mode of VLAN with the `exit` command, you return to the Interface Configuration mode.

- If you exit the Interface Configuration mode of VLAN with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

7.4.3.1   ip dhcp relay circuit-id

Description

With this command, you assign a Circuit ID to the interface.

Requirement

- The interface is an IP interface.

- You are in the Interface configuration mode of VLAN

  The command prompt is as follows:

  ```
  cli(config-if-vlan-$$)#
  ```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip dhcp relay circuit-id <circuit-id>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`circuit-id`	Circuit ID	1 ... 188

Result

The Circuit ID is assigned.

Further notes

You remove the Circuit ID with the `no ip dhcp relay circuit-id` command.

You display the IP addresses with the `show dhcp server` command.

You display the settings with the `show ip dhcp relay information` command.

7.4.3.2 no ip dhcp relay circuit-id

Description

With this command, you remove the Circuit ID.

Requirement

- The interface is an IP interface.

- You are in the Interface Configuration mode of VLAN. The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-vlan-$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no ip dhcp relay circuit-id
```

Result

The Circuit ID is removed.

Further notes

You configure the Circuit ID with the `ip dhcp relay circuit-id` command.

You display the IP addresses with the `show dhcp server` command.

You display the settings with the `show ip dhcp relay information` command.

7.4.3.3 ip dhcp relay remote-id

Description

With this command, you specify the device ID.

Requirement

- The interface is an IP interface.
- You are in the Interface Configuration mode of VLAN. The command prompt is as follows:

  ```
  cli(config-if-vlan-$$)#
  ```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip dhcp relay remote-id <remote-id name>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`remote-id name`	Device ID	max. 32 characters Default: XYZ

Result

The device ID is specified.

Further notes

You remove the device ID with the `no ip dhcp relay remote-id` command.

You display the IP addresses with the `show dhcp server` command.

You display the settings with the `show ip dhcp relay information` command.

7.4.3.4 no ip dhcp relay remote-id

Description

With this command, you remove the device identifier.

Requirement

- The interface is an IPv4 interface.

- You are in the Interface configuration mode

  The command prompt is as follows:

  ```
  cli(config-if-$$)#
  ```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no ip dhcp relay remote-id
```

Result

The device ID is removed.

Further notes

You configure the device ID with the `ip dhcp relay remote-id` command.

You display the IP addresses with the `show dhcp server` command.

You display the settings with the `show ip dhcp relay information` command.

7.5   SNMP

This section describes commands of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP).

7.5.1   The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

7.5.1.1   show snmp

Description

This command shows the status information of SNMP.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli>
```
or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show snmp`

Result

The status information is displayed.

7.5.1.2 show snmp community

Description

This command shows the details of the configured of SNMP communities.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show snmp community`

Result

The details of the configured SNMP communities are displayed.

7.5.1.3 show snmp engineID

Description

This command shows the SNMP identification number of the device.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show snmp engineID
```

Result

The SNMP identification number of the device is displayed.

7.5.1.4   show snmp filter

Description

This command shows the configured SNMP filters.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show snmp filter
```

Result

The configured SNMP filters are displayed.

7.5.1.5   show snmp group

Description

This command shows the configured SNMP groups.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show snmp group
```

Result

The configured SNMP groups are displayed.

7.5.1.6   show snmp group access

Description

This command shows the rights of the configured SNMP groups.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show snmp group access
```

Result

The rights of the configured SNMP groups are displayed.

7.5.1.7   show snmp inform statistics

Description

This command shows the statistics of the Inform Messages.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show snmp inform statistics
```

Result

The statistics of the Inform Messages are displayed.

7.5.1.8 show snmp notif

Description

With this command, you display the configured SNMP notification types.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show snmp notif
```

Result

The configured SNMP notification types are displayed.

7.5.1.9 show snmp targetaddr

Description

This command shows the configured SNMP target addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show snmp targetaddr
```

Result

The configured SNMP target addresses are displayed.

7.5.1.10 show snmp targetparam

Description

This command shows the configured SNMP target parameters.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show snmp targetparam
```

Result

The configured SNMP target parameters are displayed.

7.5.1.11 show snmp tcp

Description

This command shows the configuration for SNMP via TCP.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show snmp tcp
```

Result

The configuration for SNMP via TCP is displayed.

7.5.1.12   show snmp user

Description

This command shows the settings for the SNMP user.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` **or** `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show snmp user
```

Result

The settings for the SNMP user are displayed.

7.5.1.13   show snmp viewtree

Description

This command shows the settings for the SNMP tree views.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` **or** `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show snmp viewtree`

Result

The settings for the SNMP tree views are displayed.

7.5.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

7.5.2.1 snmpagent

Description

With this command, you enable the SNMP agent function.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`snmpagent`

Result

The SNMP agent function is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the SNMP agent function with the `no snmpagent` command.

7.5.2.2   no snmpagent

Description

With this command, you disable the SNMP agent function.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no snmpagent
```

Result

The SNMP agent function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the SNMP agent function with the `snmpagent` command.

7.5.2.3   snmp agent version

Description

With this command, you configure whether all SNMP queries or only SNMPv3 queries are processed.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
snmp agent version{v3only|all}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
v3only	only SNMPv3 queries are processed	-
all	all SNMP queries are processed	Default: all

Result

The setting is configured.

7.5.2.4   snmp access

Description

With this command, you configure the access to an SNMP group.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
snmp access <GroupName>{v1|v2c|v3{auth|noauth|priv}}
 [read <ReadView|none>][write <WriteView|none>][notify <NotifyView|none>]
 [{volatile|nonvolatile}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
GroupName	Name of the group to which access is configured	max. 32 characters
-	Selects the version of the protocol used	• v1 • v2c • v3
-	Selects the authentication method:	• auth enables MD5 or SHA as authentication method • noauth no authentication • priv enables authentication and encryption

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`read`	the data can be read Keyword	• `ReadView` • `none`
`write`	the data can be read and written Keyword	• `WriteView` • `none`
`notify`	Changes can be set as a tag Keyword	• `NotifyView` • `none`
Storage type	specifies whether the settings remain following a restart	• `volatile` (volatile): The settings are lost after a restart • `nonvolatile` (non-volatile): The settings are retained after a restart

The keywords need to be specified.

If optional parameters are not specified when configuring a group, the default value will be used.

Result

The settings for access to an SNMP group are configured.

Further notes

You delete the access to an SNMP group with the `no snmp access` command.

You display the configured SNMP groups with the `show snmp group` command.

You display the access configurations for SNMP groups with the `show snmp group access` command.

You display the configured SNMP tree views with the `show snmp viewtree` command.

7.5.2.5 no snmp access

Description

With this command, you delete the access to an SNMP group.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
snmp access <GroupName>{v1|v2c|v3{auth|noauth|priv}}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`GroupName`	Name of the group to which access is deleted	max. 32 characters
Version	Selects the version of the protocol used	• `v1` • `v2c` • `v3`
Authentication	Selects the authentication method:	• `auth` • `noauth` • `priv`

Result

The access to an SNMP group is deleted.

Further notes

You configure the setting with the `snmp access` command.

You display the configured SNMP groups with the `show snmp group` command.

You display the access configurations for SNMP groups with the `show snmp group access` command.

You display the configured SNMP tree views with the `show snmp viewtree` command.

7.5.2.6 snmp community index

Description

With this command, you configure the details of an SNMP community.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
snmp community index <CommunityIndex> name <CommunityName>
    security <SecurityName> [context <Name>][{volatile|nonvolatile}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
CommunityIndex	Index of the community	max. 32 characters
name	Keyword for the name of the community	-
CommunityName	Name of the community	max. 32 characters
security	Keyword for the security name	-
SecurityName	Security name	max. 32 characters
context	Keyword for the context name	-
Name	Context name	max. 32 characters
Storage type	specifies whether the settings remain following a restart	• volatile (volatile): The settings are lost after a restart • nonvolatile (non-volatile): The settings are retained after a restart

If optional parameters are not specified when configuring a community, the default values apply.

Result

The settings are configured.

Further notes

You delete the details of an SNMP community with the no snmp community index command.

You show the details of an SNMP community with the show snmp community command.

You show the status information of the SNMP communication with the show snmp command.

7.5.2.7 no snmp community index

Description

With this command, you delete the details of an SNMP community.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no snmp community index <CommunityIndex>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
CommunityIndex	Name of the community	max. 32 characters

Result

The details of an SNMP community are deleted.

Further notes

You configure the details of an SNMP community with the `snmp community index` command.

You show the details of an SNMP community with the `show snmp community` command.

You show the status information of the SNMP communication with the `show snmp` command.

7.5.2.8 snmp group

Description

With this command, you configure the details of an SNMP group.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
snmp group <GroupName> user <UserName>security-model{v1|v2c|v3}
   [{volatile|nonvolatile}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`GroupName`	Name of the group	max. 32 characters
`user`	Keyword for the user name	-
`UserName`	Name of the user	max. 32 characters
`security-model`	specifies which security settings will be used	• `v1` • `v2c` • `v3`
Storage type	specifies whether the settings remain following a restart	• `volatile` (volatile): The settings are lost after a restart • `nonvolatile` (non-volatile): The settings are retained after a restart

If optional parameters are not specified when configuring a group, the default values apply.

Result

The details of the group are configured.

Further notes

You delete the details of an SNMP group with the `no snmp group` command.

You display the created SNMP groups with the `show snmp group` command.

You display the created SNMP user with the `show snmp user` command.

7.5.2.9 no snmp group

Description

With this command, you delete the details of an SNMP group.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no snmp group <GroupName> user <UserName>security-model{v1|v2c|v3}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`GroupName`	Name of the group	max. 32 characters
`user`	Keyword for the user name	-
`UserName`	Name of the user	max. 32 characters
`security-model`	Specifies which security settings are used for sending	• `v1` • `v2c` • `v3`

Result

The details of the group are deleted.

Further notes

You change the details of an SNMP group with the `snmp group` command.

You display the created SNMP groups with the `show snmp group` command.

You display the created SNMP user with the `show snmp user` command.

7.5.2.10 snmp notify

Description

With this command, you configure the details of the SNMP notifications.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
snmp notify <NotifyName> tag <TagName> type {Trap|Inform}
   [{volatile|nonvolatile}]]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`NotifyName`	Name of the SNMP notification	max. 32 characters
`tag`	Keyword for a target key	-
`TagName`	Name of the target key	max. 32 characters

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`Type`	Type of the SNMP notification	• `Trap` generates a trap • `Inform` generates a log entry or sends an entry to the log server
Storage type	specifies whether the settings remain following a restart:	• `volatile` (volatile): The settings are lost after a restart • `nonvolatile` (non-volatile): The settings are retained after a restart

Result

The details of the SNMP notifications are configured.

Further notes

You delete the details of an SNMP group with the `no snmp notify` command.

You display the configured SNMP notifications with the `show snmp notif` command.

You display the configured SNMP target addresses with the `show snmp targetaddr` command.

7.5.2.11   no snmp notify

Description

With this command, you delete the details of the SNMP notifications.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no snmp notify <NotifyName>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`NotifyName`	Name of the notification	max. 32 characters

Result

The details of the SNMP notifications are deleted.

Further notes

You change the details of an SNMP group with the `snmp notify` command.

You display the configured SNMP notifications with the `show snmp notif` command.

You display the configured SNMP target addresses with the `show snmp targetaddr` command.

7.5.2.12   snmp targetaddr

Description

With this command, you configure the SNMP target addresses.

Requirement

- The SNMP target parameters are configured.

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
snmp targetaddr <TargetAddressName> param <ParamName>  {ipv4<IPAddress>}
 [timeout <Seconds(1-1500)] [retries <RetryCount(1-3)]
 [taglist <TagIdentifier | none>]  [{volatile | nonvolatile}]
 [port <integer (1-65535)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values
`TargetAddressName`	Name of the target address	max. 32 characters
`param`	Keyword for the parameter name	-
`ParamName`	Name of the destination address or the designation of the parameter name	max. 32 characters

Parameter	Description	Range of values
`ipv4`	Keyword for an IPv4 address	-
`IPAddress`	Value for an IPv4 unicast address	Enter a valid IPv4 unicast address.
`timeout`	Keyword for the time the SNMP agent waits for a response before it repeats the inform request message	-
`Seconds`	Time in seconds	1 ... 1500
`retries`	Keyword for the maximum number of attempts to obtain a response to an inform request message	-
`RetryCount`	Number of attempts	1 ... 3
`taglist`	Keyword for tag list	-
`TagIdentifier`	Tag identifier that selects the destination address for SNMP.	Specify the tag identifier.
`none`	No tag identifier	-
`volatile` `nonvolatile`	Specifies whether the settings remain following a restart.	`volatile`: The default settings are used after a restart. `nonvolatile`: The saved settings are used after a restart.
`port`	Keyword for the port number at which the SNMP manager receives traps and inform messages	-
`integer`	Port number	1 ... 65535

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If optional parameters are not specified when configuring, the following defaults apply:

Parameter	Default value
`taglist`	snmp
Type of storage	`volatile`
`port`	162

Result

The SNMP target address is configured.

Further notes

You delete the SNMP target address with the `no snmp targetaddr` command.

You display the SNMP target address with the `show snmp targetaddr` command.

You configure the SNMP target parameters with the `snmp targetparams` command.

You display the SNMP target parameters with the `show snmp targetparam` command.

7.5.2.13   no snmp targetaddr

Description

With this command, you delete the SNMP target address.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no snmp targetaddr <TargetAddressName>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`TargetAddressName`	SNMP target address	max. 32 characters

Result

The SNMP target address is deleted.

Further notes

You change the SNMP target address with the `snmp targetaddr` command.

You display the SNMP target address with the `show snmp targetaddr` command.

7.5.2.14   snmp targetparams

Description

With this command, you configure the SNMP target parameters.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
snmp targetparams <ParamName>
   user <UserName>
   security-model {v1|v2c|v3{auth|noauth|priv}}
   message-processing {v1|v2c|v3}[{volatile|nonvolatile}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
ParamName	Name of the SNMP parameter	max. 32 characters
user	Keyword for the user name	-
UserName	Value for the user name	max. 32 characters

security-model	Specifies which SNMP version is used. With SNMPv3 a security level (authentication, encryption) can also be configured.	• SNMP version
		  – v1
		  – v2c
		  – v3
		• Security level for v3
		  – auth
		    Authentication enabled / no encryption enabled
		  – noauth
		    No authentication enabled, no encryption enabled
		  – priv
		    Authentication enabled / encryption enabled

message-processing	Specifies which SNMP version is used for processing the messages and whether the settings remain following a restart.	• SNMP version
		  – v1
		  – v2c
		  – v3
		• Settings after the restart
		  – volatile (volatile):
		    The settings are lost after a restart
		  – nonvolatile (nonvolatile):
		    The settings are retained after a restart

Keywords need to be specified.

If optional parameters are not specified when configuring, the default values apply.

Result

The SNMP target parameters are configured.

Further notes

> You delete the SNMP target parameters with the `no snmp targetparams` command.
>
> You display settings of this function with the `show snmp targetparam` command.
>
> You configure the user profile with the `snmp user` command.
>
> You configure a filter with the `snmp filterprofile` command.
>
> You display the list of users with the `show snmp user` command.

7.5.2.15 no snmp targetparams

Description

> With this command, you delete the SNMP target parameters.

Requirement

> You are in the Global configuration mode.
>
> The command prompt is as follows:
>
> `cli(config)#`

Syntax

> Call up the command with the following parameters:
>
> `no snmp targetparams <ParamName>`
>
> The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ParamName`	Name of the SNMP parameter	max. 32 characters

Result

> The SNMP target parameters are deleted.

Further notes

> You change the SNMP target parameters with the `snmp targetparams` command.
>
> You display settings of this function with the `show targetparam` command.

7.5.2.16   snmp v1-v2 readonly

Description

With this command, you block write access for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2 PDUs.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
snmp v1-v2 readonly
```

Result

Write access for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2 PDUs is blocked.

Further notes

You release write access for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2 PDUs with the `no snmp v1-v2 readonly` command.

7.5.2.17   no snmp v1-v2 readonly

Description

With this command, you enable write access for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2 PDUs.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no snmp v1-v2 readonly
```

Result

Write access for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2 PDUs is enabled.

Further notes

You block write access for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2 PDUs with the `snmp v1-v2 readonly` command.

7.5.2.18 snmp user

Description

With this command, you configure the details of an SNMP user.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
snmp user <UserName>[auth{md5|sha} <passwd>[priv DES<passwd>]]
   [{volatile|nonvolatile}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
UserName	Name of the user	max. 32 characters
auth	specifies that authentication takes place and which algorithm is used	• `md5` (Message Digest 5) • `sha` (Secure Hash Algorithm) Default: No authentication
passwd	Password for authentication	max. 32 characters
priv DES	specifies that there is encryption	- Default: no encryption
passwd	Value for the password of the encryption	max. 32 characters
Storage type	specifies whether the settings remain following a restart:	• `volatile` (volatile): The default settings are used after a restart • `nonvolatile` (non-volatile): The saved settings are used after a restart

If optional parameters are not specified when configuring an SNMP user, the defaults values apply.

Result

The details of the SNMP user are configured.

Further notes

You delete the settings with the `no snmp user` command.

You display the configured users with the `show snmp user` command.

7.5.2.19 no snmp user

Description

With this command, you delete the details of an SNMP user.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no snmp user <UserName>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
UserName	Name of the user	max. 32 characters

Result

The details of the SNMP user are deleted.

Further notes

You change the settings with the `snmp user` command.

You display the configured users with the `show snmp user` command.

7.5.2.20 snmp view

Description

With this command, you configure an SNMP view.

Requirement

- An SNMP group has been created
- The access to the group is configured with `snmp access`
- You are in the Global Configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
snmp view <ViewName><OIDTree>[mask<OIDMask>]{included|excluded}
   [{volatile|nonvolatile}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ViewName`	Name of the SNMP view	max. 32 characters
`OIDTree`	Object ID	Path information of the MIB tree
`mask`	Keyword for the OID mask	-
`OIDMask`	Mask that filters access to the elements of the MIB tree	A series of "`0`" and "`1`" separated by dots in keeping with the path information of the MIB tree
View type	Specifies whether the filtered elements are used or excluded	• `include` (Default) • `excluded`
Storage type	specifies whether the settings remain following a restart:	• `volatile` (volatile): The settings are lost after a restart • `nonvolatile` (non-volatile): The settings are retained after a restart (default)

If optional parameters are not specified when configuring, the default values apply.

Result

The SNMP view is configured.

Further notes

You delete the view with the `no snmp view` command.

You display the configured view trees with the `show snmp viewtree` command.

You display the SNMP group access rights with the `show snmp group access` command.

You configure the SNMP group access rights with the `snmp access` command.

7.5.2.21   no snmp view

Description

With this command, you delete an SNMP view.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no snmp view <ViewName><OIDTree>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
ViewName	Name of the view	max. 32 characters
OIDTree	Object ID	Path information of the MIB tree

Result

The SNMP view is deleted.

Further notes

You configure a view with the `snmp view` command.

You display the configured view trees with the `show snmp viewtree` command.

7.6 SMTP client

This section describes commands of the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP).

7.6.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

7.6.1.1 show events smtp-server

Description

This command shows the configured e-mail servers.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` **or** `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show events smtp-server
```

Result

The configured e-mail servers are displayed.

7.6.1.2 show events sender email

Description

This command shows the configured e-mail sender address.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` **or** `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show events sender email
```

Result

The configured e-mail sender address is displayed.

7.6.1.3   show events smtp-port

Description

This command shows the configured SNMP port.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show events smtp-port
```

Result

The configured SMTP port is displayed.

7.6.2   Commands in the Events configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the EVENTS configuration mode.

In the Global configuration mode, enter the `events` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the EVENTS configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.

- If you exit the EVENTS configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

7.6.2.1 smtp-server

Description

With this command, you configure an entry for an SMTP server.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
smtp-server {ipv4 <ucast_addr>} <receiver mail-address>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values
ipv4	Keyword for an IPv4 address	-
ucast_addr	Value for an IPv4 unicast address	Enter a valid IPv4 unicast address.
receiver mail-address	Name of the recipient	max. 100 characters

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

An entry for the SMTP server is configured.

Further notes

You delete an SMTP server entry with the `no smtp-server` command.

7.6.2.2 no smtp-server

Description

With this command, you delete an SMTP server entry.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no smtp-server ipv4 <ucast_addr>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values
ipv4	Keyword for an IPv4 address	-
ucast_addr	Value for an IPv4 address	Enter a valid IPv4 address.

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The SMTP server entry is deleted.

Further notes

You configure an e-mail server entry with the `smtp-server` command.

7.6.2.3   sender mail-address

Description

With this command, you configure the e-mail name of the sender.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
sender mail-address <mail-address>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
mail-address	Email name of the sender	max. 100 characters

Result

The e-mail name of the sender is configured.

Further notes

You reset the e-mail name of the sender with the `no sender mail-address`.

You display the setting with the `show events sender email` command.

7.6.2.4   no sender mail-address

Description

With this command, you reset the e-mail name of the sender.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-events)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`no sender mail-address`

Result

The e-mail name of the sender is reset.

Further notes

You configure the e-mail name of the sender with the `sender mail-address`.

You display the setting with the `show events sender email` command.

7.6.2.5   send test mail

Description

With this command, you send an e-mail according to the currently configured SMTP settings.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-events)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
send test mail
```

Result

An e-mail according to the currently configured SMTP settings is sent.

Further notes

You can display the current SMTP settings with the `show events smtp-server` command.

7.6.2.6　　smtp-port

Description

With this command, you configure an SMTP port.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
smtp-port <smtp-port(1-65535)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
smtp-port	Value for the SMTP port	1 ... 65535
		Default: 25

Result

An SMTP port is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the setting to the default with the `no smtp-port` command.

You display the setting with the `show smtp-port` command.

7.6.2.7   no smtp-port

Description

With this command, you reset the SMTP port to the default.

The default value is 25.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no smtp-port
```

Result

The SMTP port is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the setting with the `smtp-port` command.

You display the setting with the `show smtp-port` command.

7.7   HTTP server

This section describes commands of the Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP).

7.7.1   The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

7.7.1.1   show ip http server status

Description

This command shows the status of the HTTP server.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show ip http server status`

Result

The status of the HTTP server is displayed.

7.7.2   Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

7.7.2.1   ip http

Description

With this command, you enable HTTP on the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`ip http`

As default the function is "enabled".

Result

HTTP is enabled on the device.

Further notes

You can display the setting of this function and other information with the `show ip http server status` command.

You deactivate HTTP on the device with the `no ip http` command.

7.7.2.2 no ip http

Description

With this command, you disable HTTP on the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`no ip http`

Result

HTTP is disabled on the device.

Further notes

You can display the setting of this function and other information with the `show ip http server status` command.

You enable HTTP with the `ip http` command.

7.8 HTTPS server

This section describes commands of the Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTPS).

7.8.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

7.8.1.1 show ip http secure server status

Description

This command shows the status of the HTTPS server.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show ip http secure server status
```

Result

The status, cipher suite and version of the HTTPS server are displayed.

7.8.1.2 show ssl server-cert

Description

This command shows the SSL server certificate.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show ssl server-cert
```

Result

The SSL server certificate is displayed.

7.9 ARP

This section describes commands of the Address Resolution Protocol (ARP).

7.9.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

7.9.1.1 show ip arp

Description

With this command, you display the IP ARP table.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show ip arp [{Vlan<vlan-id(1-4094)>|<interface-type><interface-id>|
             <ip-address>|<mac-address>|summary|information}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`Vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
ip-address	Shows the IP addresses of the entries in the ARP table	-
mac-address	Shows the MAC addresses of the entries in the ARP table	-
summary	Shows a summary of the entries in the ARP table	-
information	Displays information on the ARP configuration	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the IP ARP table is displayed.

Result

The IP ARP table is displayed.

7.9.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

7.9.2.1 arp timeout

Description

With this command, you configure the timeout setting of the ARP cache.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`arp timeout <seconds(30-86400)>`

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
seconds	Value for the timeout in seconds	30 ... 86400 Default: 300

Result

The setting for the timeout setting of the ARP cache is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the timeout setting to the default with the `no arp timeout` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ip arp` command.

7.9.2.2   no arp timeout

Description

With this command, you reset the timeout setting of the ARP cache back to the default value.

The default value for the timeout setting is 300 seconds.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no arp timeout
```

Result

The timeout setting for the ARP cache is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You change the timeout setting with the `arp timeout` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ip arp` command.

7.10 SSH server

This section describes commands of the Secure Shell (SSH) Server.

7.10.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

7.10.1.1 show ip ssh

Description

This command shows the settings of the SSH server.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show ip ssh`

Result

The settings for the SSH server are displayed.

7.10.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

7.10.2.1   ssh-server

Description

With this command, you enable the SSH protocol on the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ssh-server
```

As default the function is "enabled".

Result

The SSH protocol is enabled on the device.

Further notes

You disable the SSH protocol with the `no ssh-server` command.

7.10.2.2   no ssh-server

Description

With this command, you disable the SSH protocol on the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ssh-server
```

Result

The SSH protocol is disabled on the device.

Further notes

You enable the SSH protocol with the `ssh-server` command.

Layer 2 management protocols

<div style="text-align: right; font-size: large;">**8**</div>

8.1 Introduction to the section "Layer 2 management protocols"

In this part, you will find sections relating to the topics GARP, IGMP snooping and IGMP querying.

8.2 GARP

This section describes commands of the following protocols:

- GARP - Generic Attribute Registration Protocol
- GMRP - GARP Multicast Registration Protocol
- GVRP - GARP VLAN Registration Protocol

8.2.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

8.2.1.1 show forward-all

Description

With this command, you display the entries of the GMRP forward all table.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show forward-all`

Result

The entries of the GMRP forward all table are displayed.

8.2.1.2   show forward-unregistered

Description

With this command, you display the entries of the GMRP forward unregistered table.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show forward-unregistered
```

Result

The entries of the GMRP forward unregistered table are displayed.

8.2.2   Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

8.2.2.1   gmrp

Description

With this command, you enable the GMRP function for all or individual interfaces on the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode

or

You are in the Interface configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
cli (config-if-$$$) #
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
gmrp
```

Result

In the Global configuration mode: The GMRP function is enabled on the device.

In the Interface configuration mode: The GMRP function is enabled for this interface.

Further notes

You need to enable GMRP globally for this device before you enable GMRP for individual interfaces.

If you want to enable or disable the function for a specific interface on the device, use the `no gmrp` command in the Interface configuration mode.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show vlan device info` command.

8.2.2.2   no gmrp

Description

With this command, you disable the GMRP function for all or individual interfaces on the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode

or

You are in the Interface configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
cli (config-if-$$$) #
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no gmrp
```

Result

In the Global configuration mode: The GMRP function is disabled on the device.

In the Interface configuration mode: The GMRP function is disabled for this interface.

Further notes

If you want to enable the function for a specific interface on the device, use the `gmrp` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show vlan device info` command.

8.2.2.3   gvrp

Description

With this command, you enable the GVRP function for all or individual interfaces on the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode

or

You are in the Interface configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

```
cli (config-if-$$$) #
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
gvrp
```

Result

In the Global configuration mode: The GVRP function is enabled on the device.

In the Interface configuration mode: The GVRP function is enabled for this interface.

Further notes

If you have enabled the GARP module, you start GVRP explicitly with this command.

If you want to disable the function for a specific interface on the device, use the `no gvrp` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show vlan device info` command.

8.2.2.4 no gvrp

Description

With this command, you disable the GVRP function for all or individual interfaces on the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode

or

You are in the Interface configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

```
cli (config-if-$$$) #
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no gvrp
```

Result

In the Global configuration mode: The GVRP function is disabled on the device.

In the Interface configuration mode: The GVRP function is disabled for this interface.

Further notes

If you want to enable the function for a specific interface on the device, use the `gvrp` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show vlan device info` command.

8.3 IGMP snooping

This section describes the snooping functionality of the Internet Group Management Protocol.

8.3.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

8.3.1.1 show ip igmp snooping

Description

This command shows information about IGMP snooping for all or a selected VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode or in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#` or `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show ip igmp snooping [Vlan<vlan id]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
Vlan	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
vlan id	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The information about IGMP snooping is displayed.

8.3.1.2 show ip igmp snooping forwarding-database

Description

This command shows the multicast forwarding entries for all or a selected VLAN.

Requirement

- IGMP snooping is enabled on the device
- You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show ip igmp snooping forwarding-database [Vlan<vlan id>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`Vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The multicast forwarding entries are displayed.

8.3.1.3 show ip igmp snooping globals

Description

This command shows an overview of the settings of IGMP snooping.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
show ip igmp snooping globals
```

Result

The settings are displayed.

8.3.1.4 show ip igmp snooping groups

Description

This command shows information about IGMP snooping for all or a selected VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode or in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#` or `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show ip igmp snooping groups [Vlan <vlan id> [Group <Address>]] [{static|dynamic}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
Vlan	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
vlan id	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
Group		
Address		
-		• static • dynamic

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The information about IGMP snooping is displayed.

8.3.1.5 show ip igmp snooping mrouter

Description

This command shows the ports at which IGMP queriers are connected for all or a selected VLAN..

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show ip igmp snooping mrouter [Vlan <vlan index>] [detail]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameters	Description	Range of values
vlan	Keyword for a VLAN or VLAN range	-
vlan index	Number of the addressed VLAN or VLAN range	1 ... 4094
detail	Specifies that detailed information is displayed.	-

Result

A list of the ports is displayed.

8.3.1.6 show ip igmp snooping statistics

Description

This command shows the statistical information about IGMP snooping for all or a selected VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli> or cli#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show ip igmp snooping statistics [Vlan<vlan id>]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
Vlan	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
vlan id	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The statistical information is displayed.

8.3.1.7   show ip igmp snooping switch-ip

Description

This command shows the IP address of the source for IGMP snooping.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show ip igmp snooping switch-ip`

Result

The IP address is displayed.

8.3.2   Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

8.3.2.1 ip igmp snooping version

Description

This command specifies which version of IGMP the device will use. When shipped, the device uses IGMPv3.

Note

There is no separate show command to display the version of IGMP used by the device. This information is shown when you enter the `show ip igmp snooping` command in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip igmp snooping version {v1 | v2 | v3}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
v1	IGMPv1
v2	IGMPv2
v3	IGMPv3

Result

The version of IGMP used by the device is specified.

8.3.2.2 ip igmp vlan-snooping

Description

With this command, you enable IGMP snooping for all VLANs.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ip igmp vlan-snooping
```

Result

IGMP snooping is enabled for all VLANs.

Further notes

You disable IGMP snooping with the `no ip igmp vlan-snooping` command.

8.3.2.3   no ip igmp vlan-snooping

Description

With this command, you disable IGMP snooping for all VLANs.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ip igmp vlan-snooping
```

Result

IGMP snooping is disabled for all VLANs.

Further notes

You enable IGMP snooping with the `ip igmp vlan-snooping` command.

8.3.2.4 ip igmp snooping clear counters

Description

With this command, you delete the counters for all or a selected VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip igmp snooping clear counters [Vlan<vlan id>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
vlan	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
vlan id	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select a VLAN, the counters of all VLANs will be deleted.

Result

The counters are deleted.

8.3.2.5 ip igmp snooping switch-ip

Description

With this command, you configure the IP address of the source for IGMP snooping.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`ip igmp snooping switch-ip<switch-ipaddr>`

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`switch-ipaddr`	Address of the source	Specify a valid IP address. Default: 0.0.0.0

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The IP address is configured.

8.3.2.6 ip igmp snooping port-purge-interval

Description

The time after which a port is deleted from the list if no IGMP router control packets are received is known as the purge time.

With this command, you configure this purge time for a port for a VLAN in seconds.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`ip igmp snooping port-purge-interval <(130-1225)seconds>`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
-	Value for the purge time in seconds	130 ... 1225 Default: 260

Result

The purge time is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the setting to the default with the `no ip igmp snooping port-purge-interval` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ip igmp snooping globals` command.

8.3.2.7 no ip igmp snooping port-purge-interval

Description

With this command, you reset the setting for the purge time to the default value.

The default value is 260 seconds.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ip igmp snooping port-purge-interval
```

Result

The purge time is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the setting with the `ip igmp snooping port-purge-interval` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ip igmp snooping globals` command.

8.3.3 Commands in the VLAN configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the VLAN Configuration mode.

In the Global Configuration mode, enter the `vlan $$$` command to change to this mode. When doing this, you need to replace the `$$$` placeholders with the relevant VLAN ID.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the VLAN Configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the VLAN Configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global Configuration mode.

- If you exit the VLAN Configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

8.3.3.1 ip igmp snooping static-group

Description

With this command, you create a static IGMP entry in the FDB.

Requirement

You are in the VLAN Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip igmp snooping static-group <mcast_addr> ports <interface-type> <iface_list>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
static-group	Keyword for a static entry	-
mcast_addr	Value for a multicast address	Enter a valid multicast address.
ports	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
iface_list	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

Result

The static IGMP entry has been created.

Further notes

You delete a static IGMP entry with the `no ip igmp snooping static-group` command.

8.3.3.2   no ip igmp snooping static-group

Description

With this command, you delete a static IGMP entry.

Requirement

You are in the VLAN Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no ip igmp snooping static-group <mcast_addr>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
static-group	Keyword for a static entry	-
mcast_addr	Value for a multicast address	Enter a valid multicast address.

Result

The static IGMP entry has been deleted.

Further notes

You create a static IGMP entry with the `ip igmp snooping static-group` command.

8.4   IGMP querier

This section describes the commands for the query functionality of the Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP).

8.4.1   Commands in the Global Configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

8.4.1.1 ip igmp snooping querier

Description

With this command, you configure the IGMP snooping switch as querier.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ip igmp snooping querier
```

As default the function is "disabled".

Result

The IGMP snooping switch is configured as querier.

Further notes

You delete the setting with the `no ip igmp snooping querier` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ip igmp snooping` command.

8.4.1.2 no ip igmp snooping querier

Description

With this command, you delete the configuration of an IGMP snooping switch as querier.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ip igmp snooping querier
```

Result

The configuration of the IGMP snooping switch as querier is deleted.

Further notes

You configure the setting with the `ip igmp snooping querier` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ip igmp snooping` command.

8.5 Ring redundancy and standby connection

The ring redundancy function allows several devices to be interconnected in a ring structure. Since such a topology is not supported in normal network operation, such rings are logically disconnected using the Media Redundancy Protocol (MRP) or the High Speed Redundancy Protocol (HRP). If one component fails, all other elements of the ring can still be reached.

The device that logically disconnects the ring is known as the Redundancy Manager (RM).

The simple structure of the individual MRP rings allows shorter reaction times if disruptions occur.

Complex network topologies cannot be set up with this function.

This means that two rings can be connected redundantly in each case via two links (master, slave). This function is known as the standby connection.

One link is active on an interface of the master device and the second is inactive on an interface of the slave device.

Note

Position of master and slave device

The master and slave device of a standby connection (link pair between different structures of the ring redundancy) must be located in the same ring.

This section describes commands of the ring redundancy function.

Note

Avoiding bad configurations

When using the commands in this section, you should take particular care because a bad configuration of this function can have serious negative affects on the network.

8.5.1   clear hrp counters

Description

With this command, you reset the HRP counters.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
clear hrp counters
```

Result

The HRP counters have been reset.

8.5.2   clear ring-redundancy manager counters

Description

With this command, you reset the following counters:

● How often the device as redundancy manager switched to the active status, i.e. closed the ring.

● The maximum delay time of the test frames of the redundancy manager.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli>
```
or ```cli#```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
clear ring-redundancy manager counters
```

Result

The counters are reset.

8.5.3 clear standby counter

Description

With this command, you reset the counters of the standby function.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
clear standby counter
```

Result

The standby counter is reset.

8.5.4 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

8.5.4.1 show hrp counters

Description

With this command, you display the following information:

- How often the device as redundancy manager switched to the active status, i.e. closed the ring.
- The maximum delay time of the test frames of the redundancy manager.
- How often the IE switch has changed the standby status from "Passive" to "Active".

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` **or** `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show hrp counters`

Result

The counters are displayed.

8.5.4.2   show ring-redundancy

Description

With this command, you show the current configuration of the ring redundancy and standby functions.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` **or** `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show ring-redundancy`

Result

The current configurations are displayed.

8.5.4.3 show ring-redundancy manager counters

Description

With this command, you display the following information:

- How often the device as redundancy manager switched to the active status, i.e. closed the ring.
- The maximum delay time of the test frames of the redundancy manager.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show ring-redundancy manager counters`

Result

The counters are displayed.

8.5.5 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

8.5.5.1 ring-redundancy configuration

Description

With this command, you change to the Redundancy Configuration mode.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ring-redundancy configuration
```

Result

You are now in the Redundancy Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-red)#
```

Further notes

You exit the Redundancy Configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command.

8.5.5.2   ring-redundancy hrpobserver

Description

With this command, you enable the observer or restart it.

The "observer" function is only available in HRP rings. The observer monitors malfunctions of the redundancy manager or incorrect configurations of an HRP ring.

If the observer is enabled, it can interrupt the connected ring if errors are detected. To do this, the observer switches a ring port to the "blocking" status. When the error is resolved, the observer enables the port again.

If numerous errors occur in quick succession, the observer no longer enables its port automatically. The ring port remains permanently in the "blocking" status. This is signaled by the error LED and a message text. After the errors have been eliminated, you can enable the port again with this command and the parameter `restart`.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`ring-redundancy hrpobserver [restart]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`restart`	Restarts the observer.

If you do not specify the optional parameter, the observer is enabled.

Result

The observer is enabled or restarted.

Further notes

You disable the observer with the `no ring-redundancy hrpobserver` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

8.5.5.3 no ring-redundancy hrpobserver

Description

With this command, you disable the observer.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

`no ring-redundancy hrpobserver`

Result

The observer is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the observer with the `ring-redundancy hrpobserver` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

8.5.5.4 ring-redundancy mode

Description

With this command, you enable the ring redundancy function on a device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`ring-redundancy mode {ard | mrpauto | mrpclient | hrpclient | hrpmanager}`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ard`	Enables the automatic redundancy mode (Automatic Redundancy Detection)	• Default setting with PROFINET variants: enabled • Default setting with EtherNet/IP variants: disabled
`mrpauto`	Enables the automatic MRP manager	-
`mrpclient`	Enables ring redundancy with the MRP protocol as client	-
`hrpclient`	Enables ring redundancy with the HRP protocol as client	-
`hrpmanager`	Enables ring redundancy with the HRP protocol in ring redundancy manager mode	-

Result

The ring redundancy function is enabled and the redundancy mode is selected.

Further notes

You disable the ring redundancy function with the `no ring-redundancy` command.

8.5.5.5   no ring-redundancy

Description

With this command, you disable the ring redundancy function on a device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ring-redundancy
```

Result

The ring redundancy function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the ring redundancy function with the `ring-redundancy mode` command.

8.5.5.6   ring-redundancy standby

Description

With this command, you enable the standby function.

Requirement

- HRP is enabled

- You are in the Global configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  ```
  cli(config)#
  ```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ring-redundancy standby
```

Result

The standby function is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the setting with the `no ring-redundancy standby` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

8.5.5.7 no ring-redundancy standby

Description

With this command, you disable the standby function.

Requirement

- HRP is enabled
- You are in the Global configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`no ring-redundancy standby`

Result

The standby function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the setting with the `ring-redundancy standby` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

8.5.6 Commands in the redundancy configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Redundancy Configuration mode.

In the Global Configuration mode, enter the `ring-redundancy configuration` command to change to this mode.

- If you exit the Redundancy Configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global Configuration mode.

- If you exit the Redundancy Configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

8.5.6.1 ring ports

Description

With this command, you configure the ports of the ring redundancy manager or ring redundancy client on a device.

- **Redundancy manager**

  - In the normal status, the network structure is operated via port. The other port is only used by the ring redundancy manager for checking.

  - If there is a disruption, the two parts of the ring operate via both ports.

- **Redundancy client**

  - The client forwards all frames.

Requirement

You are in the Redundancy configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-red)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ring ports <interface-type><interface-id><interface-type><interface-id>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`interface-type`	Specifies the interface type for the first ring port
`interface-id`	Specifies the number of the interface for the first ring port
`interface-type`	Specifies the interface type for the second ring port
`interface-id`	Specifies the number of the interface for the second ring port

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Note

Differing port addresses

The first and second port must be configured on different interfaces.

Result

The ports of the ring redundancy are configured.

8.5.6.2 standby connection-name

Description

With this command, you assign a name to the standby connection on the device.

Requirement

You are in the Redundancy configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-red)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
standby connection-name <string(32)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
<string(32)>	Name of the connection	max. 32 characters

Result

The standby connection is assigned a name.

8.5.6.3 no standby connection-name

Description

With this command, you delete the name of a standby connection.

Requirement

You are in the Redundancy Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-red)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no standby connection-name
```

Result

The name of the standby connection is deleted.

8.5.6.4 standby force-master

Description

With this command, you enable the standby force-master function.

Requirement

- HRPis enabed
- You are in the Redundancy configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  ```
  cli(config-red)#
  ```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
standby force-master
```

Result

The standby force-master function is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the setting with the `no standby force-master` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

8.5.6.5 no standby force-master

Description

With this command, you disable the standby force-master function.

Requirement

- HRPis enabed
- You are in the Redundancy configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  ```
  cli(config-red)#
  ```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no standby force-master
```

Result

The standby force-master function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the setting with the `standby force-master` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

8.5.6.6 standby port

Description

With this command, you configure and enable the port for a standby connection on a device.

Requirement

You are in the Redundancy configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-red)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
standby port {<interface-type> <interface-id>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The ports for a standby connection are configured and enabled.

Further notes

You disable the setting with the `no standby port` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

8.5.6.7   no standby port

Description

With this command, disable the port for a standby connection on a device.

Requirement

You are in the Redundancy configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-red)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`no standby port [<interface-type><interface-id>}`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The ports for a standby connection are disabled.

Further notes

You enable the setting with the `standby port` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

8.6 Unicast

The commands in this section configure the procedures for handling Unicast frames.

The commands allow the following:

- Filtering of Unicast frames
- Blocking of ports
- Automatic learning of Unicast
- Blocking unknown Unicast frames.

With the "show" commands, you can display the configuration data.

With the following commands, note which "Base bridge mode" you are in. If you are in the "Transparent Bridge" mode, all settings relate to the management VLAN: VLAN 1.

You change the mode with the `base bridge-mode` command.

8.6.1 The "show" commands VLAN bridge)

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

8.6.1.1 show mac-address-table

Description

This command shows the table with the static and dynamic unicast MAC addresses and multicast MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show mac-address-table [vlan<vlan-range>][address<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>]
    [interface <interface-type><interface-id>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN or VLAN range	-
`vlan-range`	Number of the addressed VLAN or VLAN range	1 ... 4094
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The entries of the MAC addresses table are displayed.

8.6.1.2   show mac-address-table dynamic unicast

Description

This command shows the table with the dynamic unicast MAC addresses assigned by the device.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show mac-address-table dynamic unicast[vlan<vlan-range>]
    [address<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>][{interface<interface-type>
    <interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
vlan	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
vlan-range	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
address	Keyword for a MAC address	-
aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa	MAC address	-
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The dynamic unicast MAC addresses are displayed.

8.6.1.3   show mac-address-table static unicast

Description

This command shows the table with the static unicast MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show mac-address-table static unicast[vlan<vlan-range>]
  [address<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>][{interface<interface-type><interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
vlan	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
vlan-range	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
address	Keyword for a MAC address	-
aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa	MAC address	-

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The static unicast MAC addresses are displayed.

8.6.1.4 show unicast-block config

Description

This command shows the unicast blocking settings for ports.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show unicast-block config [port <interface-type> <interface-id)>]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`port`	Keyword for a port description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of interfaces and addresses, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The unicast blocking settings for ports are displayed.

8.6.2 Commands in the global configuration mode (VLAN bridge)

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

8.6.2.1 mac-address-table static unicast

Description

With this command, you generate a static unicast MAC address entry in the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
mac-address-table static unicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
  vlan <vlan-id(1-4094)>
  interface ([<interface-type> <interface-id>]
            [<interface-type> <0/a-b, 0/c,...>]
            [port-channel <interface-list>])
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa	MAC address of the interface	-
vlan	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
vlan-id	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
port-channel	Keyword for a port channel connection	Enter a valid port channel connec-tion.
interface-list	Number of the addressed port channel	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The entry in the forwarding database is generated.

Further notes

With the `show mac-address-table static unicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `no mac-address-table static unicast` command, you delete an entry.

8.6.2.2 no mac-address-table static unicast

Description

With this command, you delete a static unicast MAC address entry from the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no mac-address-table static unicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
   vlan<vlan-id(1-4094)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The entry is deleted from the forwarding database.

Further notes

With the `show mac-address-table static unicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `mac-address-table static unicast` command, you create an entry.

8.6.3 The "show" commands (Transparent Bridge)

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

8.6.3.1 show dot1d mac-address-table

Description

This command shows the table with the static and dynamic unicast entries and the dynamic multicast entries.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show dot1d mac-address-table [address <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>]
    [{interface <interface-type> <interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	Specify a valid MAC address.
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The entries are displayed.

8.6.3.2 show dot1d mac-address-table static unicast

Description

This command shows the table with the static unicast MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show dot1d mac-address-table static unicast [address <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>]
 [{interface <interface-type> <interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
address	Keyword for a MAC address	-
aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa	MAC address	-
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The static unicast MAC addresses are displayed.

8.6.3.3 show unicast-block config

Description

This command shows the unicast blocking settings for ports.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show unicast-block config [port <interface-type> <interface-id)>]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`port`	Keyword for a port description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of interfaces and addresses, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The unicast blocking settings for ports are displayed.

8.6.4 Commands in the global configuration mode (Transparent Bridge)

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

8.6.4.1 mac-address-table static unicast

Description

With this command, you generate a static unicast MAC address entry in the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
mac-address-table static unicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
   interface ([<interface-type> <interface-id>]
             [<interface-type> <0/a-b, 0/c,...>]
             [port-channel <interface-list>])
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa	MAC address of the interface	-
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
port-channel	Keyword for a port channel connection	Enter a valid port channel connec-
interface-list	Number of the addressed port channel	tion.

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The entry in the forwarding database is generated.

Further notes

With the `show dot1d mac-address-table static unicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `no mac-address-table static unicast` command, you delete an entry.

8.6.4.2 no mac-address-table static unicast

Description

With this command, you delete a static unicast MAC address entry from the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`no mac-address-table static unicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The entry is deleted from the forwarding database.

Further notes

With the `show dot1d mac-address-table static unicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `mac-address-table static unicast` command, you create an entry.

8.7 Multicast

8.7.1 Introduction to the multicast section

The commands in this section configure the procedures for handling Multicast frames.

The commands allow the following:

- Configuration of groups
- IGMP
- Blocking unknown Multicast frames.

With the "show" commands, you can display the configuration data.

With the following commands, note which "Base bridge mode" you are in. If you are in the "Transparent Bridge" mode, all settings relate to the management VLAN: VLAN 1.

You change the mode with the `base bridge-mode` command.

8.7.2 The "show" commands VLAN bridge)

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

8.7.2.1 show mac-address-table

Description

This command shows the table with the static and dynamic unicast MAC addresses and multicast MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show mac-address-table [vlan<vlan-range>][address<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>]
     [interface <interface-type><interface-id>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN or VLAN range	-
`vlan-range`	Number of the addressed VLAN or VLAN range	1 ... 4094
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The entries of the MAC addresses table are displayed.

8.7.2.2 show mac-address-table dynamic multicast

Description

This command shows the table with the dynamic multicast MAC addresses assigned by the device.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show mac-address-table dynamic multicast[vlan<vlan-range>]
    [address<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>]
    [{interface<interface-type><interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
vlan	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
vlan-range	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
address	Keyword for a MAC address	-
aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa	MAC address	-
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type of interface	Enter a valid interface
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The dynamic multicast MAC addresses are displayed.

8.7.2.3 show mac-address-table static multicast

Description

This command shows the table with the static multicast MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show mac-address-table static multicast[vlan<vlan-range>]
  [address<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>][{interface<interface-type><interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
vlan	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
vlan-range	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
address	Keyword for a MAC address	-
aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa	MAC address	-
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The static multicast MAC addresses are displayed.

8.7.2.4　show multicast-block config

Description

This command shows the multicast blocking settings for ports.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show multicast-block config [port <interface-type> <interface-id)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`port`	Keyword for a port description	-
`interface-type`	Type of interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If no parameters are specified, the settings for all ports are displayed.

Result

The multicast blocking settings for ports are displayed.

8.7.3 Commands in the global configuration mode (VLAN bridge)

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

8.7.3.1 mac-address-table static multicast

Description

With this command, you generate a static multicast MAC address entry in the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
mac-address-table static multicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
    vlan<vlan-id(1-4094)>
    interface([<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
```

```
                    [<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
                    [port-channel<1-8>]])
        [forbidden-ports([<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
                    [<interface-type><0/ab,0/c, ...>]
                    [port-channel <1-8>]])
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type of interface	Enter a valid interface.
`0/a-b, 0/c,...`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`port-channel`	Specifies the name of a port channel	1-8
`forbidden-ports`	Keyword for the interface description of the blocked ports	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The entry in the forwarding database is generated.

Further notes

With the `show mac-address-table static multicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `no mac-address-table static multicast` command, you delete an entry.

8.7.3.2   no mac-address-table static multicast

Description

With this command, you delete a static multicast address.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no mac-address-table static multicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa> vlan <vlan-id(1-4094)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

The "static multicast" function is disabled.

8.7.4 The "show" commands (Transparent Bridge)

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

8.7.4.1 show dot1d mac-address-table

Description

This command shows the table with the static and dynamic unicast entries and the dynamic multicast entries.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show dot1d mac-address-table [address <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>]
    [{interface <interface-type> <interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
address	Keyword for a MAC address	-
aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa	MAC address	Specify a valid MAC address.
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The entries are displayed.

8.7.4.2 show dot1d mac-address-table static multicast

Description

This command shows the table with the static multicast MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show dot1d mac-address-table static multicast [address <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>]
 [{interface <interface-type> <interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
address	Keyword for a MAC address	-
aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa	MAC address	-
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The static multicast MAC addresses are displayed.

8.7.4.3 show multicast-block config

Description

This command shows the multicast blocking settings for ports.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show multicast-block config [port <interface-type> <interface-id)>]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
port	Keyword for a port description	-
interface-type	Type of interface	Enter a valid interface
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If no parameters are specified, the settings for all ports are displayed.

Result

The multicast blocking settings for ports are displayed.

8.7.5 Commands in the global configuration mode (Transparent Bridge)

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

8.7.5.1 mac-address-table static multicast

Description

With this command, you generate a static multicast MAC address entry in the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
mac-address-table static multicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
    interface ([<interface-type> <interface-id>]
               [<interface-type> <interface-id>]
               [port-channel <1-8>]])
   [forbidden-ports ([<interface-type> <interface-id>]
                     [<interface-type> <interface-id>]
                     [port-channel <1-8>]])
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type of interface	Specify a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`port-channel`	Specifies the name of a port channel	1-8
`forbidden-ports`	Keyword for the interface description of the blocked ports	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

The entry in the forwarding database is generated.

Further notes

With the `show dot1d mac-address-table static multicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `no mac-address-table static multicast` command, you delete an entry.

8.7.5.2 no mac-address-table static multicast

Description

With this command, you delete a static multicast MAC address entry from the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`no mac-address-table static multicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>`

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

The entry is deleted from the forwarding database.

Further notes

With the `show dot1d mac-address-table static multicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `mac-address-table static multicast` command, you create an entry.

Load control 9

This part contains the sections describing the functions for controlling and balancing network load.

9.1 Rate control

This section describes commands for controlling and restricting the data transmission rate of an interface.

9.1.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

9.1.1.1 show rate-limit output

Description

This command shows the packet rate for limiting the outgoing data stream of one or all interfaces.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show rate-limit output[interface<interface-type><interface-id>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The entries are displayed.

9.1.2 Commands in the interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In the Global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

● If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.

● If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

9.1.2.1 rate-limit output

Description

With this command, you configure and enable the data rate in Kbps for limiting the outgoing data stream of the interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
rate-limit output <rate-value>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
rate-value	Value for the in data rate in Kbps	Default: The data rate is set to 0. The outgoing data stream is not limited.

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

The limitation of the outgoing data stream of the interface with the data rate is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the function with the `no rate-limit output` command.

9.1.2.2 no rate-limit output

Description

With this command, you disable the data rate for limiting the outgoing data stream of the interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no rate-limit output
```

Result

The limitation of the outgoing data stream of the interface with the data rate is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `rate-limit output` command.

9.1.2.3   storm-control

Description

With this command, you enable data rate for limiting the incoming data stream of the interface for broadcast, multicast or unknown unicast packets.

Note

Applications

Storm control is only supported on physical interfaces.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
storm-control{broadcast|multicast|dlf}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
broadcast	Limits broadcast packets
multicast	Limits multicast packets
dlf	Limits unicast packets with unresolvable addresses (dfl = destination lookup fail)

As default the function is "disabled" for all transfer types.

Note

Configuration of the threshold value

The default value for the storm control level is 0 Kbps. The incoming data stream is not limited.

To have the incoming data stream limited, configure the threshold value with the `storm-control level` command.

Result

The storm control function is enabled.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `no storm-control` command.

You configure the threshold value for the storm control function with the `storm-control level` command.

9.1.2.4 no storm-control

Description

With this command, you disable the storm control function for broadcast, multicast or unknown unicast packets.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no storm-control{broadcast|multicast|dlf}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
broadcast	Disables broadcast storm control
multicast	Disables multicast storm control
dlf	Disables unknown unicast storm control

if you call up the function without parameters, it is disabled for all types of transmission.

Result

The storm control function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `storm-control` command.

9.1.2.5   storm-control level

Description

With this command, you configure the value for the storm control function in Kbps.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
storm-control level <rate-value>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`rate-value`	Value for the in data rate in Kbps	The value range depends on the port speed. The entry is rounded down to the next valid value. If small values are entered, the value is rounded up to the next valid value.
		Default:
		The data rate is set to 0. The incoming data stream is not limited.

Result

The value for the storm control function is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the setting to the default with the `no storm-control level` command.

9.1.2.6   no storm-control level

Description

With this command, you reset the value for the storm control function to the default value.

The default value for the storm control level is 0 Kbps. The incoming data stream is not limited.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no storm-control level
```

Result

The value for the storm control function is reset to the default.

Further notes

You configure the value for the storm control function with the `storm-control level` command.

9.2 Static MAC filtering

This section describes commands for filtering data packet on an interface.

With the following commands, note which "Base bridge mode" you are in. If you are in the "Transparent Bridge" mode, all settings relate to the management VLAN: VLAN 1.

You change the mode with the `base bridge-mode` command.

9.2.1 Commands in the global configuration mode (VLAN bridge)

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

9.2.1.1 mac-address-table static multicast

Description

With this command, you generate a static multicast MAC address entry in the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
mac-address-table static multicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
   vlan<vlan-id(1-4094)>
   interface([<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
             [<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
             [port-channel<1-8>]])
   [forbidden-ports([<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
                    [<interface-type><0/ab,0/c, ...>]
                    [port-channel <1-8>]])
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type of interface	Enter a valid interface.
`0/a-b, 0/c,...`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`port-channel`	Specifies the name of a port channel	1-8
`forbidden-ports`	Keyword for the interface description of the blocked ports	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The entry in the forwarding database is generated.

Further notes

With the `show mac-address-table static multicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `no mac-address-table static multicast` command, you delete an entry.

9.2.1.2 no mac-address-table static multicast

Description

With this command, you delete a static multicast MAC address entry from the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no mac-address-table static multicast<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
        vlan<vlan-id(1-4094)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa	MAC address of the interface	-
vlan	Keyword for the number of a VLAN connection	-
vlan-id	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The entry is deleted from the forwarding database.

Further notes

With the `show mac-address-table static multicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `mac-address-table static multicast` command, you create an entry.

9.2.1.3 mac-address-table static unicast

Description

With this command, you generate a static unicast MAC address entry in the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
mac-address-table static unicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
  vlan <vlan-id(1-4094)>
   interface ([<interface-type> <interface-id>]
             [<interface-type> <0/a-b, 0/c,...>]
             [port-channel <interface-list>])
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa	MAC address of the interface	-
vlan	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
vlan-id	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
port-channel	Keyword for a port channel connection	Enter a valid port channel connection.
interface-list	Number of the addressed port channel	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The entry in the forwarding database is generated.

Further notes

With the show mac-address-table static unicast command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the no mac-address-table static unicast command, you delete an entry.

9.2.1.4   no mac-address-table static unicast

Description

With this command, you delete a static unicast MAC address entry from the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no mac-address-table static unicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
   vlan<vlan-id(1-4094)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The entry is deleted from the forwarding database.

Further notes

With the `show mac-address-table static unicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `mac-address-table static unicast` command, you create an entry.

9.2.2 Commands in the global configuration mode (Transparent Bridge)

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

9.2.2.1 mac-address-table static multicast

Description

With this command, you generate a static multicast MAC address entry in the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
mac-address-table static multicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
    interface ([<interface-type> <interface-id>]
               [<interface-type> <interface-id>]
               [port-channel <1-8>]])
   [forbidden-ports ([<interface-type> <interface-id>]
                      [<interface-type> <interface-id>]
                      [port-channel <1-8>]])
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa	MAC address of the interface	-
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type of interface	Specify a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
port-channel	Specifies the name of a port channel	1-8
forbidden-ports	Keyword for the interface description of the blocked ports	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

The entry in the forwarding database is generated.

Further notes

With the `show dot1d mac-address-table static multicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `no mac-address-table static multicast` command, you delete an entry.

9.2.2.2   no mac-address-table static multicast

Description

With this command, you delete a static multicast MAC address entry from the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no mac-address-table static multicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa	MAC address of the interface	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

The entry is deleted from the forwarding database.

Further notes

With the `show dot1d mac-address-table static multicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `mac-address-table static multicast` command, you create an entry.

9.2.2.3   mac-address-table static unicast

Description

With this command, you generate a static unicast MAC address entry in the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
mac-address-table static unicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
   interface ([<interface-type> <interface-id>]
              [<interface-type> <0/a-b, 0/c,...>]
              [port-channel <interface-list>])
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`port-channel`	Keyword for a port channel connection	Enter a valid port channel connec-tion.
`interface-list`	Number of the addressed port channel	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The entry in the forwarding database is generated.

Further notes

With the `show dot1d mac-address-table static unicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `no mac-address-table static unicast` command, you delete an entry.

9.2.2.4   no mac-address-table static unicast

Description

With this command, you delete a static unicast MAC address entry from the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no mac-address-table static unicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The entry is deleted from the forwarding database.

Further notes

With the `show dot1d mac-address-table static unicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `mac-address-table static unicast` command, you create an entry.

9.2.3 Commands in the interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In the Global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

● If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.

● If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

9.2.3.1 switchport ingress-filter

Description

With incoming packets, the ingress filter checks whether the port on which the packet was received belongs to the sending VLAN. If this is not the case, the packet is not processed.

With this command, you enable the ingress filter.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
switchport ingress-filter
```

Result

The ingress filter is activated.

Further notes

You disable the filter with the `no switchport ingress-filter` command.

You can display the status of the ingress filter and other settings with the `show vlan port config` command.

9.2.3.2 no switchport ingress-filter

Description

With this command, you disable the ingress filter.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no switchport ingress-filter
```

Result

The ingress filter is deactivated.

Further notes

You enable the filter with the `switchport ingress-filter` command.

You can display the status of the ingress filter and other settings with the `show vlan port config` command.

9.3 Dynamic MAC aging

The section describes commands with which the aging of dynamically learned entries is configured in a MAC address list.

9.3.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

9.3.1.1 show mac-address-table aging-time

Description

To ensure that the address entries are up-to-date, MAC addresses are only kept in the address table for a specified time.

This command shows the time after which the MAC addresses are removed from the address table.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show mac-address-table aging-time
```

Result

> The time is displayed.

9.3.1.2 show mac-address-table aging-status

Description

> This command shows whether or not MAC aging is enabled.

Requirement

> You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.
>
> The command prompt is as follows:
>
> `cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

> Call the command without parameters:
>
> `show mac-address-table aging-status`

Result

> The status of the MAC aging is displayed.

9.3.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

> This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.
>
> In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.
>
> Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.
>
> You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

9.3.2.1 mac-address-table aging-time

Description

> With this command, you configure the aging of a dynamically learned entry in the MAC address list.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
mac-address-table aging-time <seconds(10-630)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
seconds	Life of the entry in seconds	10 ... 630
		Default: 40

Result

The value of the aging of a dynamically learned entry is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the setting to the default with the `no mac-address-table aging-time` command.

You display the setting with the `show mac-address-table aging-time` command.

9.3.2.2 no mac-address-table aging-time

Description

With this command, you reset the value for the aging of a dynamically learned entry in the MAC address list to the default value.

The default value is 40 s.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no mac-address-table aging-time
```

Result

The value of the aging of a dynamically learned entry is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the setting with the `mac-address-table aging-time` **command**.

You display the setting with the `show mac-address-table aging-time` **command**.

9.3.2.3 mac-address-table aging

Description

With this command, you enable the "Aging" function. The "Aging" function ensures that an entry in the MAC address list that was learned dynamically is deleted again after a certain time.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
mac-address-table aging
```

Result

The "Aging" function is enabled.

Further notes

You configure the time with the `mac-address-table aging-time` **command**.

You disable the "Aging" function with the `no mac-address-table aging` **command**.

9.3.2.4 no mac-address-table aging

Description

With this command, you disable the "Aging" function.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no mac-address-table aging
```

Result

The "Aging" function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the "Aging" function with the `mac-address-table aging` **command**.

9.4 Flow control

The flow control function monitors the incoming data traffic of a port. If there is overload ("Congestion", "Overflow") it sends a signal to the connection partner. If the flow control function receives a signal at the sending end, it stops the data transmission to avoid loss of data.

This section describes commands of the flow control function.

9.4.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

9.4.1.1 show flow-control

Description

This command shows the settings of the flow control function.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli> or cli#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show flow-control [interface <interface-type><interface-id>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the information for the router will be displayed.

Result

The settings of the flow control function are displayed.

9.4.2 Commands in the interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In the Global configuration mode, enter the interface command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the exit command, you return to the Global configuration mode.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the end command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

9.4.2.1 flowcontrol

Description

The flow control function monitors a connection at the receiving end to make sure that not more data is received than can be processed. If flow control detects a threat of data overflow, the partner at the sending end is sent a signal to stop transmitting.

With this command, you configure the flow control function for an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
flowcontrol {on|off}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
on	Enables the function
off	Disables the function

Result

The settings for the flow control function are configured.

Further notes

You can display the status of this function with the `show flow-control` command.

9.5 Service classes

This section describes commands for configuring the assignment tables for service classes and the Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP).

9.5.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

9.5.1.1 show qos agent-priority

Description

This command shows the current priority of agent frames.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show qos agent-priority`

Result

The current priority of the agent frames is displayed.

Further notes

You configure the priority of agent frames with the `agent-priority` command.

9.5.1.2 show qos broadcast-priority

Description

This command shows the current priority of broadcast frames.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show qos broadcast-priority`

Result

The current priority of the broadcast frames is displayed.

Further notes

You configure the priority of agent frames with the `broadcast-priority` command.

9.5.1.3 show qos cos-map

Description

This command shows the assignment table of CoS priorities to queues.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show qos cos-map
```

Result

The assignment table of CoS priorities to queues is displayed.

Further notes

You configure the assignment of the CoS priority to a queue with the `cos-map` command.

9.5.1.4 show qos cos-remap

Description

For individual ports, this command shows the priority with which frames are sent.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show qos cos-remap
```

Result

The assignment table for send priority is displayed.

Further notes

You enable the the Cos reassignment with the `cos-remap-enable` command.

You change the priority with which frames are sent `cos-remap`command.

9.5.1.5   show qos dscp-map

Description

This command shows the assignment table of DSCP priorities to queues.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show qos dscp-map`

Result

The assignment table of DSCP priorities to queues is displayed.

Further notes

You configure the assignment of the DSCP priority to a queue with the `dscp-map` command.

9.5.1.6   show qos scheduling mode

Description

This command shows the method with which the processing order of the frames is decided.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show qos scheduling mode
```

Result

The method with which the frames are processed is displayed.

Further notes

You configure the method for deciding the processing order with the `scheduling mode` command.

9.5.1.7　show qos-trust-mode

Description

This command shows port by port the method according to which packets to be forwarded are prioritized.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show qos-trust-mode
```

Result

The list for all ports with the corresponding Trust mode is displayed.

9.5.2　Commands in the Global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

9.5.2.1 qos

Description

With this command, you change to the QOS configuration mode.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
qos
```

Result

You are now in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Further notes

You exit the QOS configuration modewith the command `end` or `exit`.

9.5.3 Commands in the QOS configuration mode

Quality of Service (QoS)

Quality of Service (QoS) is a method to allow efficient use of the existing bandwidth in a network.

QoS is implemented by prioritization of the data traffic. Incoming frames are sorted into a Queue according to a certain prioritization and further processed. This gives certain frames priority.

The different QoS methods influence each other and are therefore taken into account in the following order:

1. The switch first checks whether the incoming frame is a broadcast or agent frame.

   → When the first condition is met, the switch takes into account the set priority with the `agent-priority` or `broadcast-priority` command..

   The switch sorts the frame into a queue according to the the `cos-map` command.

2. If the first condition is not met the switch checks whether the frame contains a VLAN tag.

   → If the second condition is met, the switch checks whether the priority ia enabled (`priority-enable`).

   If priority is enabled, the switch sorts the frame into a queue according to the the `cos-map` command.

3. If the second condition is also not met the frames are further processed according to the Trust mode. You configure the trust mode with the `qos-trust-mode` command.

Commands in this section

This section describes commands that you can call up in the QOS configuration mode.

In the global configuration mode, enter the `qos` command to change to this mode.

- If you exit the QOS configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.

- If you exit the QOS configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

9.5.3.1 agent-priority

Description

With this command you specify the priority of agent frames. The switch sorts incoming frames into a queue according to this prioritization .

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
agent-priority <integer (0-7)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`integer`	Value of the priority	0 … 7

Result

The priority of agent frames is configured.

Further notes

You reset the priority of agent frames to the default value with the `no agent-priority` command.

You display the current priority of agent frames with the `show qos agent-priority` command.

You configure the assignment of the CoS priority to a queue with the `cos-map` command.

9.5.3.2 no agent-priority

Description

With this command, you reset the priority of agent frames back to the default value.

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no agent-priority
```

Result

The priority of agent frames has been reset to the default value.

Further notes

You change the priority of agent frames with the `agent-priority` command.

You display the current priority of agent frames with the `show qos agent-priority` command.

You configure the assignment of the CoS priority to a queue with the `cos-map` command.

9.5.3.3 broadcast-priority

Description

With this command you specify the priority of broadcast frames. The switch sorts incoming frames into a queue according to this prioritization .

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
broadcast-priority <integer (0-7)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`integer`	Value of the priority	0 … 7

Result

The priority of broadcast frames is configured.

Further notes

You reset the priority of broadcast frames to the default value with the `no broadcast-priority` command.

You display the current priority of broadcast frames with the `show qos broadcast-priority` command.

You configure the assignment of the CoS priority to a queue with the `cos-map` command.

9.5.3.4 no broadcast-priority

Description

With this command, you reset the priority of broadcast frames back to the default value.

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
broadcast-priority
```

Result

The priority of broadcast frames has been reset to the default value.

Further notes

You change the priority of broadcast frames with the `broadcast-priority` command.

You display the current priority of broadcast frames with the `show qos broadcast-priority` command.

You configure the assignment of the CoS priority to a queue with the `cos-map` command.

9.5.3.5 cos-map

Description

With this command, you configure the assignment of CoS priorities to queues.

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
cos-map <cos(0-7)> queue <queue(1-4)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`cos`	Priority	0 … 7 Default: 1
`queue`	Keyword for a queue	-
`queue`	Queue to which this priority is assigned	1 … 4 Default: 2

The CoS priorities are assigned to the queues as follows in the default setting:

- COS 0 → Queue 2
- COS 1 → Queue 1
- COS 2 → Queue 1
- COS 3 → Queue 2
- COS 4 → Queue 3
- COS 5 → Queue 3
- COS 6 → Queue 4
- COS 7 → Queue 4

Result

The assignment table for service classes is configured.

Further notes

You display the current assignment table of CoS priorities to queues with the `show qos cos-map` command.

9.5.3.6 cos-remap

Description

With this command depending on the priority when receiving a frame, you can change the priority with which it is sent.

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`cos-remap interface <interface-type><interface-id> <prio (0-7)> <remapped prio (0-7)>`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`prio`	Priority with which a frame is received.	0 … 7
`remapped prio`	Priority with which a frame will be sent	0 … 7

Result

The send priority has been changed.

Further notes

You reset the send priority to the default value with the `no cos-remap` command.

You enable the CoS reassignment with the `cos-remap-enable` command.

You disable the the CoS reassignment with the `no cos-remap-enable` command.

You display the assignment table for the send priority with the `show qos cos-remap` command.

9.5.3.7 no cos-remap

Description

With this command, you reset the send priority back to the default value.

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-qos)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`no cos-remap`

Result

The send priorities are reset to the default value.

Further notes

You change the send priority depending on the priority when receiving a frame with the `cos-remap` command.

You enable the the CoS reassignment with the `cos-remap-enable` command.

You disable the the CoS reassignment with the `no cos-remap-enable` command.

You display the assignment table for the send priority with the `show qos cos-remap` command.

9.5.3.8 cos-remap-enable

Description

With this command, you enable the CoS reassignment function. Depending on the priority when receiving a frame, you can change the priority with which it is sent.

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
cos-remap-enable
```

Result

The CoS reassignment function is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the function with the `no cos-remap-enable` command.

You change the priority with which frames are sent with the `cos-remap` command.

You reset the send priority to the default value with the `no cos-remap` command.

You display the assignment table for the send priority with the `show qos cos-remap` command.

9.5.3.9   no cos-remap-enable

Description

With this command, you disable the CoS reassignment function.

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no cos-remap-enable
```

Result

The CoS reassignment function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `cos-remap-enable` command.

You change the priority with which frames are sent with the `cos-remap` command.

You reset the send priority to the default value with the `no cos-remap` command.

You display the assignment table for the send priority with the `show qos cos-remap` command.

9.5.3.10   dscp-map

Description

With this command, you configure the assignment of DSCP priorities to queues.

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
dscp-map <dscp (0-63)> queue <queue(1-4)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
dscp	Priority	0 … 63
queue	Keyword for a queue	-
queue	Queue to which this priority is assigned	1 … 4

The DSCP priorities are assigned to the queues as follows in the default setting:

- DSCP codes 0 - 15 → Queue 1

- DSCP codes 16 - 31 → Queue 2

- DSCP codes 32 - 47 → Queue 3

- DSCP codes 48 - 63 → Queue 4

Result

The assignment table for DSCP codes is configured.

Further notes

You display the current assignment table of DSCP priorities to queues with the `show qos dscp-map` command.

9.5.3.11   qos-trust-mode

Description

With this command you can set the method according to which frames to be forwarded are prioritized port by port.

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
qos-trust-mode interface <interface-type> <interface-id > {untrust|cos|dscp|cos-dscp}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`untrust`	The switch sorts the incoming frames into a queue according to the prioritization of the receiving port. If there is a DSCP value in the IP header, this is ignored. If a VLAN tag exists, it is replaced by the priority value of the receiving port.	-
`cos`	If an incoming frame contains a VLAN tag, the switch sorts it into a queue according to this prioritization. If the frame does not contain a VLAN tag, the switch sorts the frame into a queue according to the prioritization of the receiving port. If there is a DSCP value in the IP header, this is ignored.	Default setting with PROFINET variants
`dscp`	If an incoming frame contains a DSCP prioritization, the switch sorts it into a queue according to this prioritization. If the frame does not contain a DSCP prioritization, the switch sorts the frame into a queue according to the prioritization of the receiving port. If the frame contains a VLAN tag, this is ignored.	Default setting with EtherNet/IP variants
`cos-dscp`	With an incoming frame, there is a sequential check of which prioritization it contains. If it contains a DSCP prioritization, it is handled as in the "Trust DSCP" mode. If it contains no DSCP prioritization, the switch checks whether it contains a VLAN tag. If it contains a VLAN tag, the switch sorts it into a queue according to this prioritization. If the frame contains neither a DSCP prioritization nor a VLAN tag, the switch sorts the frame into a queue according to the prioritization of the receiving port.	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The prioritization for forwarding frames is configured.

Further notes

You configure the assignment of the CoS priority to a queue with the `cos-map` command.

You configure the assignment of the DSCP priority to a queue with the `dscp-map` command.

You configure the prioritization of the receiving port with the `switchport priority default` command.

SCALANCE XB-200/XP-200 Command Line Interface

420   Configuration Manual, 05/2016, C79000-G8976-C361-03

9.5.3.12 scheduling mode

Description

With this command, you can specify the order in which the frames in the forwarding queues are sent. The higher the queue number, the higher the send priority.

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
scheduling mode <strict | weighted>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
strict	As long as there are frames with high priority in the queue, only these high-priority frames are processed.	-
weighted	Even if there are frames with high priority in the queue, frames with a lower priority will be processed occasionally.	-

Result

The method for the processing order of the frames is specified.

Further notes

You display the method for the processing order of the frames with the `show qos scheduling mode` command.

Security and authentication

10

This part contains the sections that describe the access rights and authentication methods.

10.1 User rights management

This section describes commands for access as administrator and the configuration of the authentication methods.

10.1.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

10.1.1.1 show users

Description

This command shows the logged-in CLI users.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show users`

Result

The logged-in CLI users are displayed.

10.1.2   whoami

Description

This command shows the user name of the logged in user.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`whoami`

Result

The user name of the logged in user is displayed.

10.2   RADIUS client

RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service) is a client/server protocol that allows the centralized logging in of users logging on in a physical or virtual network. This makes central administration of user data possible.

This section describes commands relevant for the configuration of this service.

10.2.1   The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

10.2.1.1   show radius statistics

Description

This command shows the connection statistics from the RADIUS client to the RADIUS server.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show radius statistics
```

Result

The connection statistics are displayed.

10.2.1.2 show radius server

Description

This command shows the RADIUS server configuration.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show radius server [<ucast_addr>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
ucast_addr	Value for an IPv4 unicast address	Enter a valid unicast address

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If no parameters are specified, all configured RADIUS servers are displayed.

Result

The RADIUS server configuration is displayed.

10.2.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

10.2.2.1 login authentication

Description

With this command, you enable authentication via a RADIUS server.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`login authentication {radius | local-and-radius | radius-fallback-local}`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`radius`	The login is via a RADIUS server.	-
`local-and-radius`	The login is possible both with the users that exist in the firmware (user name and password) and via a RADIUS server.	The local users have priority. The user is first searched for in the local database. If the user does not exist there, a RADIUS query is sent.
`radius-fallback-local`	The authentication must be handled via a RADIUS server.	A local authentication is performed only when the RADIUS server cannot be reached in the network.

Result

The authentication is made according to the selected parameter.

Further notes

You disable the authentication via a RADIUS server with the `no login authentication` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show device information` command.

10.2.2.2   no login authentication

Description

With this command, you disable authentication via a RADIUS server.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

`no login authentication`

Result

The RADIUS authentication is deactivated.

Note

The login is possible only with a local user name and password. If the local logon fails, there is no authentication via a RADIUS server.

Further notes

You enable the authentication via a RADIUS server with the `login authentication` command.

10.2.2.3   radius-server

Description

With this command, you configure a RADIUS server entry on the RADIUS client.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
radius-server ipv4 <ipv4-address> [auth-port <portno(1-65535)>] [retransmit <1-
254>][key <secret-key-string>][primary]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ipv4`	Keyword for an IPv4 address.	-
`ipv4-address`	Value for the IPv4 address of the Syslog server	Enter a valid IPv4 address.
`auth-port`	Keyword for the UDP port number for authentication	-
`portno`	Number of the port	1 … 65535 Default: 1812
`retransmit`	Keyword for the number of connection retries	-
`<1-254>`	Maximum number of connection retries	1 ... 254 Default: 3
`key`	Keyword for the key for communication between the authenticator and the server	-
`secret-key-string`	Value for the key	46 characters Default: empty string
`primary`	Identifies the RADIUS server as primary server	-

For information on addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If optional parameters are not specified when configuring, the default values apply.

Note
Primary server

In a network, only one RADIUS server can be selected as the primary server.

If you select a RADIUS server as the primary server, this replaces the server that previously had the role of primary server.

Result

The entry for a connection between the RADIUS client and a server or the identification as primary server is configured.

Further notes

You delete a RADIUS server entry with the `no radius-server` command.

You show the configuration of a RADIUS server on the client with the `show radius server` command.

You show the statistical information of this function with the `show radius statistics` command.

10.2.2.4 no radius-server

Description

With this command, you delete a RADIUS server entry on the client.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no radius-server <ipv4-address> [primary]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ipv4-address`	IPv4 Internet address of the Syslog server	Format: 0.0.0.0
`primary`	Identifies the RADIUS server as primary server	-

For information on addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The entry for a connection between the RADIUS client and a server or the identification as primary server is deleted.

Further notes

You configure the connection of a RADIUS client to a server with the `radius-server` command.

You show the configuration of a RADIUS server on the client with the `show radius server` command.

You show the statistical information of this function with the `show radius statistics` command.

10.3 Management Access Control List

This section describes the commands relevant for working with the management access control list.

10.3.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

10.3.1.1 show authorized-managers

Description

This command shows the information about the configuration of the authorized managers.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show authorized-managers[ip-source<ip-address>]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ip-source`	Keyword for the network or host address	-
`ip-address`	Value for an IP address	specify a valid IP address

For information on identifiers of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The information about the configuration of the authorized managers is displayed.

10.3.2 Commands in the Global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

10.3.2.1 authorized-manager

Description

With this command, you enable the authorized manager.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
authorized-manager
```

Result

The authorized manager is activated.

Further notes

You disable the function with the `no authorized-manager` command.

10.3.2.2 no authorized-manager

Description

With this command, you disable the authorized manager.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no authorized-manager
```

Result

The authorized manager is deactivated.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `authorized-manager` command.

10.3.2.3 authorized-manager ip-source

Description

With this command, you configure the interfaces and protocols via which an authorized manager is allowed to access the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
authorized-manager ip-source <ip-address>
    [{<subnet-mask>|/<prefixlength(0-32)>}]
    [interface[<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
            [<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]]
    [vlan<a,b or a-b or a,b,c-d>]
    [service[snmp][telnet][http][https][ssh]]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
ip-address	Specifies the network or the IP address for which the IP manager is authorized	Enter a valid IPv4 address or a network.
subnet-mask	Subnet mask that restricts the authorization	Enter a valid mask.
prefixlength	Decimal representation of the mask as a number of "1" bits	0 ... 32
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type of interface	Enter a valid interface.
0/a-b,0/c,...	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
vlan	Keyword for a VLAN connection	The configurations relating to VLANs are ignored. The rules apply to all VLANs.
a,b or a-b or a,b,c-d	Number of a VLAN or VLAN range	If you have defined certain VLANs with a firmware version < 1.2, the configuration of the VLANs will be replaced during a firmware update with the default value "1-4094".
service	Specifies the services for which the manager is authorized. You can select several options.	• snmp • telnet • http • https • ssh

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

The IP address 0.0.0.0 means "any manager".

If optional parameters are not specified when configuring, the manager is authorized for all services.

Note

Configuration of the first entry

As long as the list of authorized managers is empty, access to the system is not restricted.

As soon as the list contains an entry and the "authorized-manager" command is executed, access to the system is blocked for all others.

You should therefore configure the interface via which you access the system first because your access is otherwise blocked.

Result

The interfaces and protocols via which an authorized manager is allowed to access the device are configured.

Note

No restrictions for console port

The restrictions do not apply to the serial console (console port).

Further notes

You delete an interface for access of an authorized manager with the `no authorized-manager ip-source` command.

You show the information about the configuration of the authorized managers with the `show authorized-manager` command.

10.3.2.4   no authorized-manager ip-source

Description

With this command, you delete an interface via which an authorized manager is allowed to access the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no authorized-manager ip-source <ip-address>
   [{<subnet-mask>|/<prefix-length(0-32)>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ip-address`	Specifies the network or the IP address for which the IP manager is authorized	Enter a valid IP address or a network
`subnet-mask`	Subnet mask that restricts the authorization	Enter a valid mask
`prefix-length`	Decimal representation of the mask as a number of "1" bits	0 ... 32

For information on identifiers of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

An authorized manager is deleted from the list.

Further notes

You configure the interfaces and protocols via which an authorized manager is allowed to access the device with the `authorized-manager ip-source` command.

You show the information about the configuration of the authorized managers with the `show authorized-manager` command.

10.4 Port Access Control List Locked Ports

With the Port Access Control List Locked Ports functionality, MAC addresses that do not age are collected on a port after the `start` command. With the `stop` command, these addresses are converted to static entries in the address list and the aging is reactivated for all the addresses that follow.

If the learning of addresses on this port is then disabled, data packets are only forwarded to the static addresses entered in the table.

This section describes commands relevant for the configuration of this function.

10.4.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

10.4.1.1 show lock port

Description

This command shows whether or not the learning of MAC entries is enabled or locked on an interface.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show lock port [<interface-type><interface-id>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select an interface, the configuration of all interfaces is displayed.

Result

The configuration of the interface for the learning of MAC entries is displayed.

10.4.2 Commands in the Global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

10.4.2.1 clear-all-static-unicast

Description

With this command, you delete all static unicast MAC address entries from the MAC address table.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
clear-all-static-unicast
```

Result

The static unicast MAC address entries are deleted from the MAC address table.

10.4.2.2　auto-learn

Description

With this command, you change to the AUTOLEARN mode.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
auto-learn
```

Result

You are now in the AUTOLEARN mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-auto-learn)#
```

Further notes

You exit the AUTOLEARN configuration mode with the command `end` or `exit`.

10.4.3　Commands in the interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In the Global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

10.4.3.1   switchport lock

Description

With this command, you block the learning of MAC entries. Only the static address entries of the MAC address list are used on the port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`switchport lock`

Result

The learning of MAC addresses is blocked.

Further notes

You enable the learning of MAC addresses with the `no switchport lock` command.

You display the configuration with the `show lock port` command.

10.4.3.2   no switchport lock

Description

With this command, you enable the learning of MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`no switchport lock`

Result

The learning of MAC addresses is enabled.

Further notes

You block the learning of MAC addresses with the `switchport lock` command.

You display the configuration with the `show lock port` command.

10.4.4 Commands in the AUTOLEARN mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the AUTOLEARN mode.

In the Global configuration mode, enter the `auto-learn` command to change to this mode.

- If you exit the AUTOLEARN mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the AUTOLEARN mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

10.4.4.1 start

Description

With this command, you start automatic learning. During automatic learning, the aging timer is disabled for all learned addresses.

Requirement

You are in the AUTOLEARN mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-auto-learn)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
start
```

Result

The learned MAC addresses are entered in the "port database" with the aging time 0. (The entries are NOT deleted when the "MAC Address Aging Time" expires).

Further notes

You stop automatic learning with the `stop` command.

10.4.4.2   stop

Description

With this command, you stop automatic learning and convert all learned MAC addresses to static entries.

Requirement

You are in the AUTOLEARN mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-auto-learn)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
stop
```

Result

Automatic learning is stopped and all learned entries are converted to static entries.

Further notes

You start automatic learning with the `start` command.

10.5   Port Based Network Access Control

This section describes commands for working with port-based network access control (PNAC).

10.5.1   The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

10.5.1.1 show dot1x

Description

This command shows information about port-based network access control (PNAC).

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli> or cli#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show dot1x[{interface<interface-type><interface-id>|
    statistics interface<interface-type><interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
statistics interface	Keyword for the display of the statistical data of the dot1x Authenticator for an interface	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The dot1x information is displayed.

10.5.1.2 show dot1x guest-vlan mac-info

Description

This command displays which MAC address and which port are assigned to a guest VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show dot1x guest-vlan mac-info`

Result

A list with guest VLAN, MAC address and port is displayed.

10.5.1.3 show dot1x mac-auth mac-info

Description

This command shows the MAC addresses for which MAC authentication is enabled.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show dot1x mac-auth mac-info`

Result

A list of the MAC addresses is displayed.

10.5.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

10.5.2.1 dot1x guest-vlan

Description

With this command, you enable the guest VLAN function for the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
dot1x guest-vlan
```

Result

The guest VLAN function is enabled for the device.

Further notes

You also still need to enable the guest VLAN function for every port intended to use this function. You do this with the `dot1x guest-vlan` command in the Interface configuration mode.

You disable the function with the `no dot1x guest-vlan.` command

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

10.5.2.2 no dot1x guest-vlan

Description

With this command, you disable the guest VLAN function for the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no dot1x guest-vlan
```

Result

The guest VLAN function is disabled for the device.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `dot1x guest-vlan.` command

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

10.5.2.3   dot1x mac-auth

Description

With this command, you enable MAC authentication for the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
dot1x mac-auth
```

Result

MAC authentication is enabled for the device.

Further notes

You also still need to enable MAC authentication for every port intended to use this function. You do this with the `dot1x mac-auth` command in the Interface configuration mode.

You disable the function with the `no dot1x mac-auth` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

10.5.2.4   no dot1x mac-auth

Description

With this command, you disable MAC authentication for the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no dot1x mac-auth
```

Result

MAC authentication is disabled for the device.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `dot1x mac-auth` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

10.5.3   Commands in the interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In the Global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

● If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.

● If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

10.5.3.1   dot1x guest-vlan

Description

With this command, you enable the guest VLAN function for a port.

This function is also known as "Authentication failed VLAN".

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
dot1x guest-vlan
```

Result

The guest VLAN function is enabled for the device.

Further notes

You also need to enable the guest VLAN function for the device. You do this with the `dot1x guest-vlan` command in the Global configuration mode.

You disable the function with the `no dot1x guest-vlan` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

10.5.3.2   no dot1x guest-vlan

Description

With this command, you disable the guest VLAN function for a port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no dot1x guest-vlan
```

Result

The guest VLAN function is disabled for the device.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `dot1x guest-vlan` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

10.5.3.3   dot1x guest-vlan vlan-id

Description

With this command, you configure a guest VLAN for a port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
dot1x guest-vlan vlan-id <vlan-id (1 - 4096)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan-id`	Keyword for the VLAN ID	-
-	VLAN ID	1 - 4096

Result

The guest VLAN ID is assigned to the port.

Further notes

You reset the guest VLAN ID to the default value with the `no dot1x guest-vlan vlan-id` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

10.5.3.4   no dot1x guest-vlan vlan-id

Description

With this command, the guest VLAN ID is reset to the default value 1.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no dot1x guest-vlan vlan-id
```

Result

The ID of the guest VLAN has the value 1.

Further notes

You configure the guest VLAN ID with the `dot1x guest-vlan vlan-id` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

10.5.3.5   dot1x guest-vlan reset

Description

This command removes MAC addresses from the guest VLAN. If you specify a MAC address, only this MAC address is removed from the guest VLAN. If you use this command without parameters, all MAC addresses are removed from the guest VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
dot1x guest-vlan reset [mac <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
mac	Keyword for the MAC address	-
	MAC address to be removed from the guest VLAN.	aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa

Result

The specified MAC address or all MAC addresses are no longer assigned to the guest VLAN.

10.5.3.6 set dot1x guest-vlan mac-addr count

Description

With this command, you specify how many MAC addresses can be authenticated on the port at the same time.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
set dot1x guest-vlan mac-addr count <num-of-addresses (1-100)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
num-of-addresses	Maximum number of devices	1 ... 100

Result

The maximum number of devices for the port has been specified.

Further notes

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

10.5.3.7   dot1x mac-auth

Description

With this command, you enable MAC authentication for a port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`dot1x mac-auth`

Result

MAC authentication is enabled for a port.

Further notes

You also still need to enable MAC authentication for the device. You do this with the `dot1x mac-auth` command in the Global configuration mode.

You disable the function with the `no dot1x mac-auth` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

10.5.3.8   no dot1x mac-auth

Description

With this command, you disable MAC authentication for a port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no dot1x mac-auth
```

Result

MAC authentication is disabled for a port.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `dot1x mac-auth` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

10.5.3.9 dot1x mac-auth port reset

Description

With this command, you reset MAC authentication for a port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
dot1x mac-auth port [mac <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>] reset
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`mac`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa

Result

MAC authentication is reset for the port.

10.5.3.10 dot1x mac-auth vlan-assign

Description

With this command you enable the assignment of the VLAN ID for a MAC address by the RADIUS server.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
dot1x mac-auth vlan-assign
```

Result

The VLAN ID for a MAC address is assigned by the RADIUS server.

Further notes

You disable the assignment of the VLAN ID for a MAC address by the RADIUS server with the `no dot1x mac-auth vlan-assign` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

10.5.3.11 no dot1x mac-auth vlan-assign

Description

With this command you disable the assignment of the VLAN ID for a MAC address by the RADIUS server.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no dot1x mac-auth vlan-assign
```

Result

The VLAN ID for a MAC address is no longer assigned by the RADIUS server.

Further notes

You enable the assignment of the VLAN ID for a MAC address by the RADIUS server with the `dot1x mac-auth vlan-assign` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

10.5.3.12 set dot1x mac-auth mac-addr count

Description

With this command, you specify how many MAC addresses can be authenticated on the port at the same time.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
set dot1x mac-auth mac-addr count <num-of-addresses (1-100)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
num-of-addresses	Maximum number of devices	1 ... 100

Result

The maximum number of devices for the port has been specified.

Further notes

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

10.5.3.13 dot1x port-control

Description

With this command, you configure port control parameter of the authenticator.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
dot1x port-control {auto|force-authorized|force-unauthorized}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`auto`	Authentication according to IEEE 802.1x is enabled for the interface. The data traffic via the interface is permitted or blocked depending on the authentication result.	-
`force-authorized`	data traffic via the interface is permitted without restrictions	Default: `force-authorized` enabled
`force-unauthorized`	data traffic via the interface is blocked	-

Result

The port control parameter is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the port control parameter to the default with the `no dot1x port-control` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

10.5.3.14   no dot1x port-control

Description

With this command, you reset the port control parameter of the authenticator to the default value.

The default value is `force-authorized`.

With this, data traffic is permitted without restrictions.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`no dot1x port-control`

Result

The port control parameter of the authenticator is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the port control parameter with the `dot1x port-control` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

10.5.3.15   dot1x reauthentication

Description

With this command, you enable the 802.1x Re-Authentication function for the selected interface. When the function is enabled, the authenticator repeats authentication of the client periodically,

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
dot1x reauthentication
```

Result

Periodic authentication is enabled for the selected interface.

Further notes

You disable the function with the `no dot1x reauthentication` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show dot1x`command.

10.5.3.16   no dot1x reauthentication

Description

With this command, you disable the function that repeats the authentication of the client by the authenticator periodically.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no dot1x reauthentication
```

Result

Periodic authentication is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `dot1x reauthentication` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show dot1x`command.

Diagnostics

11

The monitoring of the system and error diagnostics are handled in different ways:

- Events and faults handling:
  Predefined events generate a message. These messages can be distributed in different ways:

  – Entry in the local log

  – Transfer to the Syslog server

  – Sending as e-mail

  – Sending as SNMP trap

- Syslog:
  Configures the transfer to the Syslog server

- Remote Monitoring (RMON):
  Variables of the Management Information Base are monitored for the violation of limit values and messages are generated if they do. These messages are collected and can be distributed in the following ways:

  – Entry in the local log

  – Sending as SNMP trap

  – Transfer to the Syslog server

  – Transfer to a network management station using SNMP

- Port mirroring:
  Mirroring of ports to analyze the data stream without disturbing operation

- Loop detection:
  Detection and elimination of damaging loops. Loops in the network can cause total failure of the transfer and must be detected and eliminated.

11.1 Event and fault handling

In events and faults handling, you set the events whose messages will be distributed in one of the available ways.

You configure the monitoring of certain system events and power supply and physical interfaces in the Events configuration mode.

11.1.1 logging console

Description

With this command, you enable the logging of inputs and outputs to the console.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`logging console`

Result

The logging function is enabled on the console.

Further notes

You disable the setting with the `no logging console` command.

As default the function is "disabled".

11.1.2 no logging console

Description

With this command, you disable the logging of inputs and outputs to the console.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`no logging console`

Result

> The logging function is disabled on the console.

Further notes

> You enable the setting with the `logging console` command.
>
> As default the function is "disabled".

11.1.3 The "show" commands

> This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

11.1.3.1 show events config

Description

> This command shows the current configuration for forwarding the messages of the various event types.

Requirement

> You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.
>
> The command prompt is as follows:
>
> `cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

> Call the command without parameters:
>
> `show events config`

Result

> The current configuration of the events display is displayed.

11.1.3.2 show events severity

Description

> This command shows the degree of severity of an event ("Info", "Warning" or "Critical") starting at which a notification (sending of an e-mail, entry in the Syslog table, entry in the Syslog file) is generated.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show events severity`

Result

The corresponding degree of severity is shown for each type of notification.

Further notes

You configure the assignment of the degree of severity of an event and the type of notification with the `severity` command.

11.1.3.3   show events faults config

Description

This command shows the current configuration of the following error monitoring functions:

● Monitoring of the power supply for power outage

● Monitoring of the network connections for a change in the connection status

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show events faults config [{power|link}]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
power	Monitoring of the power supply for power outage
link	Monitoring of the network connections for a change in the connection status

If no parameters are specified, the settings for both error monitoring functions are displayed.

Result

The current configuration of the selected error monitoring function is displayed.

11.1.3.4 show events faults status

Description

This command shows the status messages of fault monitoring of the power supply and network connections.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show events faults status`

Result

A table with the status messages of the error monitoring functions is displayed.

11.1.3.5 show startup-information

Description

This command shows the startup information.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>`or`cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show startup-information`

Result

Startup information is shown.

11.1.3.6 show logbook

Description

With this command, you display the content of the logbook. The log entries are categorized differently.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show logbook
```

or

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show logbook { info | warning | critical }
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`info`	All log entries of the categories "Information", "Warning" and "Critical" are displayed.
`warning`	All log entries of the categories "Warning" and "Critical" are displayed.
`critical`	All log entries of the category "Critical" are displayed.

Result

The content of the logbook is displayed.

11.1.3.7 show fault counter

Description

This command shows the number of errors since the last startup.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show fault counter`

Result

The number of faults is displayed.

Further notes

You reset the counter for the errors with the `clear fault counter` command.

11.1.3.8   show cabletest interface

Description

This command shows the result of the cable test of the interface.

Requirement

● The interface has no active data traffic.

● The `cabletest interface` function was used on the specified interface in the Global configuration mode.

● You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show cabletest interface <interface-type> <interface-id>`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-type`	Type of interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Interface identifier	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The result is displayed.

Further notes

You enable the cable test function with the `cabletest interface` command in the Global configuration mode.

11.1.3.9 show power-line-state

Description

This command shows the status of the power supply.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show power-line-state`

Result

The status of the power supply is displayed.

11.1.4 clear logbook

Description

With this command, you delete the content of the logbook.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
clear logbook
```

Result

The content of the logbook is deleted.

11.1.5 clear fault counter

Description

With this command you reset the counter that shows the number of faults since the last startup.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
clear fault counter
```

Result

The counter is set to "0".

Further notes

You shows the number of faults since the last startup with the `show fault counter` command.

11.1.6 fault report ack

Description

With this command, you acknowledge (delete) the messages of the "Cold/Warm start" event.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameter:

```
fault report ack <fault-state-id>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameters	Description	Range of values/note
`fault-state-id`	ID of the message	Enter the ID of the message for the "Cold/Warm Start" event. To obtain the ID, use the "`show events faults status`" command.

Result

The message is acknowledged.

11.1.7 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

11.1.7.1 events

Description

With this command, you change to the EVENTS configuration mode.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
events
```

Result

You are now in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Further notes

You exit the EVENTS configuration mode with the command `end` or `exit`.

11.1.7.2 cabletest interface

Description

With this command, you enable the cable test for the specified interface.

Note

Wire pairs

Wire pairs 4-5 and 7-8 of 10/100 Mbps network cables are not used.

The wire pair assignment - pin assignment is as follows (DIN 50173):

Pair 1 = pin 1-2

Pair 2 = pin 3-6

Pair 3 = pin 4-5

Pair 4 = pin 7-8

Requirement

● The interface has no active data traffic.

● You are in the Global configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  ```
  cli(config)#
  ```

Syntax

Call up the command without parameters or with the following parameter assignment:

```
cabletest interface <interface-type> <interface-id> [force]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-type`	Type of interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Interface identifier	
`force`	Forces a `link down` during the test	Necessary parameter if there is a `link up` on the interface.

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

Following the test phase, the result is displayed.

The value for the distance has a tolerance of +/- 1 m.

11.1.8 Commands in the Events configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the EVENTS configuration mode.

In the Global configuration mode, enter the `events` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the EVENTS configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the EVENTS configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

11.1.8.1 add log

Description

With this command, you create an entry in the log.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
add log <log-entry>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
log-entry	Entry in the logbook	max. 150 characters

Result

The entry has been made in the logbook.

11.1.8.2 client config

Description

With this command, you enable one of the clients that processes or forwards the messages of the device.

The following clients are available:

- syslog: sends the messages to the Syslog server

- trap: sends the messages as SNMP trap to a configured recipient

- email: sends the messages as e-mail

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
client config {syslog|trap|email|all}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
syslog	Enables the client that sends the messages to the Syslog server
trap	Enables the client that sends the SNMP traps
email	Enables the client that sends the e-mails
all	Enables all clients at once

Result

The function of the client selected for the transfer is enabled.

Further notes

You display the status of the events and the clients with the `show events config` command.

You disable a client with the `no client config` command.

11.1.8.3   no client config

Description

With this command, you disable one of the clients that processes or forwards the messages of the device.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no client config {syslog|trap|email|all}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`syslog`	Disables the client that sends the messages to the Syslog server
`trap`	Disables the client that sends the SNMP traps
`email`	Disables the client that sends the e-mails
`all`	Disables all clients at once

Result

The client selected for the transfer is disabled.

Further notes

You display the status of the events and the clients with the `show events config` command.

You enable the function with the `client config` command.

11.1.8.4   event config

Note

The IE switch does not support all parameters, refer to the section "Features not supported (Page 26)".

Description

With this command, you configure which of the various message types of the device will be stored or forwarded.

The following events or message types are available:

● Message if there is cold or warm restart

● Message when there is a status change on a physical interface

● Message if there is an incorrect login

● Message when there is aRemote Monitoring alarm (RMON alarm)

● Message when there is a status change in the power supply

● Message when there is a status change in the redundancy manager (RM)

● Message when there is a status change on a standby connection

● Message when there is a status change in the error monitoring

● Message when there is a change in the spanning tree

● Message on status change of the VRRP routers

● Message if there is a status change in the detection of network loops

● Message on status change of OSPF routers

These messages can be processed by the clients in different ways:

● Entry in the logbook of the device

● Sending the message to the Syslog server

● Sending an e-mail

● Sending an SNMP trap

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:
```
event config
    {cold-warmstart|linkchange|authentication-failure|
     rmon-alarm|power-change|rm-state-change|standby-state-change|faultstate-change|
 stp-change|vrrp-state-change|loopd-state-change|ospf-state-change|dot1x-port-auth-
state-change|poe- state-change|fmp-state-change|env-data-change|all}
{logtable|syslog|email|trap|faults|all}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`cold-warmstart`	Message if there is cold or warm restart
`linkchange`	Message when there is a status change on a physical interface
`authentication-failure`	Message if there is an incorrect login
`rmon-alarm`	Message when there is a RMONalarm
`power-change`	Message when there is a status change in the power supply
`rm-state-change`	Message when there is a status change in the redundancy manager
`standby-state-change`	Message when there is a status change on a standby connection
`faultstate-change`	Message when there is a status change in the error monitoring
`stp-change`	Message when there is a change in the spanning tree
`vrrp-state-change`	Message on status change of VRRP routers
`loopd-state-change`	Message if there is a status change in the detection of network loops
`ospf-state-change`	Message on status change of OSPF routers
`dot1x-port-auth-state-change`	Message when there is a status change in the 802.1X authentication
`poe-state-change`	Message on status change of PoE
`fmp-state-change`	Message on status change of FMP
`all`	All messages
`logtable`	Client that processes the logbook entries
`syslog`	Client that sends the messages to the Syslog server
`email`	Client that sends the e-mails
`trap`	Client that sends the SNMP traps
`faults`	Error LED lights up. The setting is possible only for a cold or warm restart.
`env-data-change`	Message when there is a status change in the diagnostics data
`all`	All clients at once

Result

The setting deciding which message of the device is stored or forwarded is configured.

Further notes

You display the status of the events and the clients with the `show events config` command.

You delete the settings with the `no event config` command.

With this command, the clients are not enabled.

To enable the clients, use the `client config` command.

Note

Changing several message types or clients

With each command call, you can only select one message type and one client.

If you want to process several message types or clients, it may be more efficient to first select the `all` option and then disable individual elements.

11.1.8.5   no event config

Note

The IE switch does not support all parameters, refer to the section "Features not supported (Page 26)".

Description

With this command, you configure which of the various message types of the device will no longer be stored or forwarded.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no event config
   {cold-warmstart|linkchange|authentication-failure|
    rmon-alarm|power-change|rm-state-change|standby-state-change|faultstate-change|
 stp-change|vrrp-state-change|loopd-state-change|ospf-state-change|dot1x-port-auth-
state-change|poe- state-change|fmp-state-change|env-data-change|all}
    {logtable|syslog|email|trap|faults|all}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`cold-warmstart`	Message if there is cold or warm restart
`linkchange`	Message when there is a status change on a physical interface
`authentication-failure`	Message if there is an incorrect login
`rmon-alarm`	Message when there is a RMON alarm

Parameter	Description
`power-change`	Message when there is a status change in the power supply
`rm-state-change`	Message when there is a status change in the redundancy manager
`standby-state-change`	Message when there is a status change on a standby connection
`faultstate-change`	Message when there is a status change in the error monitoring
`stp-change`	Message when there is a change in the spanning tree
`vrrp-state-change`	Message on status change of VRRP routers
`loopd-state-change`	Message if there is a status change in the detection of network loops
`ospf-state-change`	Message on status change of OSPF
`dot1x-port-auth-state-change`	Message when there is a status change in the 802.1X authentication
`poe-state-change`	Message on status change of PoE
`fmp-state-change`	Message on status change of FMP
`all`	All messages
`logtable`	Client that processes the logbook entries
`syslog`	Client that sends the messages to the Syslog server
`email`	Client that sends the e-mails
`trap`	Client that sends the SNMP traps
`faults`	Error LED lights up. The setting is possible only for a cold or warm restart.
`env-data-change`	Message when there is a status change in the diagnostics data
`all`	All clients at once

Result

The setting deciding which messages of the device are not stored or forwarded is configured.

Further notes

You display the status of the events and the clients with the `show events config` command.

You configure which of the various message types of the device will be stored or forwarded with the `event config` command.

11.1.8.6   severity

Description

With this command, you configure the threshold values for the sending of system event notifications.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli (config-events) #
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`severity { mail | log | syslog } { info | warning | critical }`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`mail`	Specifies the threshold value for sending system event messages by e-mail.	-
`log`	Specifies the threshold value for entering system event messages in the log table.	-
`syslog`	Specifies the threshold value for entering system event messages in the Syslog file.	-
`info`	System events are processed as of the severity level "`Information`".	-
`warning`	System events are processed as of the severity level "`Warning`".	-
`critical`	System events are processed as of the severity level "`Critical`".	-

Result

The settings for sending system event messages are configured.

The "severity" function is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the setting with the `no severity` command.

You display the status of this function and other information `show events severity`

11.1.8.7   no severity

Description

With this command, you disable the setting for the threshold values for the sending of system event notifications.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli (config-events) #`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no severity { mail | log | syslog }
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`mail`	The setting of the threshold value for sending system event messages by e-mail is disabled.	-
`log`	The setting of the threshold value for entering system event messages in the log table disabled.	-
`syslog`	The setting of the threshold value the entering event messages in the Syslog file is disabled.	-

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

The settings for sending system event messages are configured.

Further notes

You enable the setting with the `severity` command.

You display the status of this function and other information `show events severity`.

11.1.8.8   power

Description

With this command, you configure and activate the monitoring of the power supplies.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
power [{L1|L2}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`L1`	Monitoring of power supply 1
`L2`	Monitoring of power supply 2

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value "L1 and L2" is used.

Result

The setting for monitoring the power supplies is configured.

Further notes

You can display the current setting with the `show events faults config` command.

You disable the function with the `no power` command.

11.1.8.9 no power

Description

With this command, you disable the monitoring of the power supplies.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-events)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`no power [{L1|L2}}`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`L1`	No monitoring of power supply 1
`L2`	No monitoring of power supply 2

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value "L1 and L2" is used.

Result

The setting for monitoring the power supplies is configured.

Further notes

You can display the current setting with the `show events faults config` command.

You enable the function with the `power` command.

11.1.8.10   link

Description

With this command, you configure and enable the monitoring of the physical network connections for cable breaks or for pulling of the connector.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
link {up|down}[{<interface-type><interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
up	Only the establishment of a connection is signaled	-
down	Only a break on a connection is signaled	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select an interface, the function is enabled for all available interfaces.

Result

The settings for monitoring the physical network connections have been configured.

Further notes

> You display the setting with the `show events faults config` command.
>
> You disable the function with the `no link` command.

11.1.8.11   no link

Description

> With this command, you disable the monitoring of the physical network connections for cable breaks or for pulling of the connector.

Requirement

> You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.
>
> The command prompt is as follows:
>
> `cli(config-events)#`

Syntax

> Call up the command with the following parameters:
>
> `no {up|down}[{<interface-type><interface-id>}]`
>
> The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
up	The message when establishing a connection is disabled	-
down	The message when a connection is down is disabled	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

> For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".
>
> If you do not select an interface, the function is disabled for all available interfaces.

Result

> The settings for monitoring the physical network connections have been configured.

Further notes

> You can display the current setting with the `show events faults config` command.
>
> You enable the function with the `link` command.

11.1.8.12 syslogserver

Description

With this command, you configure the Syslog server address.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli (config-events) #
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
syslogserver {ipv4 <ucast_addr>} [<port(1-65535)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
ipv4	Keyword for an IP address	-
ucast_addr	Syslog server IPv4 address	Enter a valid IPv4 address.
port	Serverport	1 .. 65535 Default: 514

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

The settings for the Syslog server are configured.

Further notes

You disable the setting with the `no syslogserver` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show events config` command.

11.1.8.13 no syslogserver

Description

With this command, you delete a Syslog server.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli (config-events) #
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
syslogserver {ipv4 <ucast_addr>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ipv4`	Keyword for an IP address	-
`ucast_addr`	Syslog server IPv4 Address	Enter a valid IPv4 address.

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The Syslog server is deleted.

Further notes

You add a Syslog server `syslogserver`.

11.2 Syslog client

With the commands in this section, the following settings are configured:

- Transfer of the messages to the Syslog server
- Local buffering and storage of messages
- Receipt and forwarding of messages from other devices (relay mode)

11.2.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

11.2.1.1 show events syslogserver

Description

This command shows the entries of the configured Syslog server.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show events syslogserver
```

Result

The entries of the configured Syslog server are displayed.

11.2.2 Commands in the Events configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the EVENTS configuration mode.

In the Global configuration mode, enter the `events` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the EVENTS configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.

- If you exit the EVENTS configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

11.2.2.1 syslogserver

Description

With this command, you configure the Syslog server address.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli (config-events) #
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
syslogserver {ipv4 <ucast_addr>} [<port(1-65535)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
ipv4	Keyword for an IP address	-
ucast_addr	Syslog server IPv4 address	Enter a valid IPv4 address.
port	Serverport	1 .. 65535 Default: 514

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

The settings for the Syslog server are configured.

Further notes

You disable the setting with the `no syslogserver` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show events config` command.

11.2.2.2   no syslogserver

Description

With this command, you delete a Syslog server.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli (config-events) #
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
syslogserver {ipv4 <ucast_addr>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ipv4`	Keyword for an IP address	-
`ucast_addr`	Syslog server IPv4 Address	Enter a valid IPv4 address.

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The Syslog server is deleted.

Further notes

You add a Syslog server `syslogserver`.

11.3 RMON

The RMON function provides commands with which variables of the Management Information Base (MIB) can be monitored for violation of limit values and to store or forward these events in the following ways:

- Entry in the local log
- Sending as SNMP trap
- Transfer to the Syslog server
- Transfer to a network management station using SNMP

11.3.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

11.3.1.1 show rmon

Description

This command shows the settings of the remote monitoring function.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show rmon [statistics [<stats-index (1-65535)>]] [alarms] [events] [history [history-
index (1-65535)] [overview]]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
statistics	Shows counts for various packet characteristics and sizes.	-
stats-index	Index number for the statistical values	1 ... 65535
alarms	Shows the threshold values and event assignments for alarms.	-
events	Shows the status and the actions that are triggered.	-
history	Shows the stored statistical values for earlier transmission periods.	-
history-index	Index number for the previous statistical values	1 ... 65535
overview	Displays an overview.	-

With this command, you can display several parameters with one call.

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, only the `enabled` or `disabled` status is shown.

Result

The settings of the remote monitoring function are displayed.

11.3.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

11.3.2.1 rmon

Description

With this command, you enable the Remote Monitoring function.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
rmon
```

Default: disabled

Result

The Remote Monitoring function is enabled.

Further notes

You disable this function with the `no rmon` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show rmon` command.

11.3.2.2   no rmon

Description

With this command, you disable the Remote Monitoring function.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no rmon
```

Default: disabled

Result

The Remote Monitoring function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable this function with the `rmon` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show rmon` command.

11.3.2.3 rmon alarm

Description

With this command, you configure an alarm for monitoring a MIB variable. The variable is checked at specific intervals to determine whether or not it has exceeded or fallen below threshold values. Events are assigned to these occurrences.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
rmon alarm <alarm-number><mib-object-id(255)>
   <sample-interval-time(1-65535)>
   {absolute|delta}
   rising-threshold<value(0-2147483647)>[risingevent-number(1-65535)]
   falling-threshold<value(0-2147483647)>[fallingevent-number(1-65535)]
   [owner<ownername(127)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`alarm-number`	Number of the alarm	1 ... 52
`mib-object-id`	Name of the MIB variable	max. 255 characters
`sample-interval-time`	Interval for the check [s]	1 ... 65535
`absolute`	The current absolute value of the monitored MIB is evaluated	-
`delta`	The difference between the current and the previous value of the monitored MIB is evaluated	-
`rising-threshold`	Keyword for threshold value for rising or high variable values	-
`value`	Relevant threshold value	1 ... 2147483647
`risingevent-number`	Event number for this	1 ... 65535
`falling-threshold`	Keyword for threshold value for falling or low variable values	-

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`value`	Relevant threshold value	1 ... 2147483647
`fallingevent-number`	Event number for this	1 ... 65535
`owner`	User to which the alarm is assigned	-
`ownername`	User name of the user	max. 127 characters

If you do not select a parameter from the parameter list, the events for high and low threshold values are assigned the lowest event number available in the event table.

Note

MIB variables that can be monitored

With the RMON function, only MIB variables of the Ethernet interfaces can be monitored.

Note

Magnitude of the threshold values

The threshold value for falling or low variable values should be less than the threshold value for rising or high variable values.

Note

Conditions for working with alarms

The events assigned to the alarms are configured.

The Remote monitoring function is started with the `rmon` command.

Result

The alarm for monitoring a MIB variable is configured.

Further notes

You delete an alarm with the `no rmon alarm` command.

You display the list of configured RMON alarms with the `show rmon alarms` command.

11.3.2.4   no rmon alarm

Description

With this command, you delete an alarm for monitoring a MIB variable.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no rmon alarm <number (1-52)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
number	Number of the alarm to be deleted	1 ... 52

Result

The entry for monitoring a MIB variable is deleted.

11.3.2.5 rmon event

Description

With this command, you configure an event in the RMON Event Table.

You specify its name and the owner and whether or not an SNMP trap is generated.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
rmon event <number(1-52)>[description<event-description(127)>]
   [owner<ownername(127)>][trap<notify(127)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
number	Number of the event	1 ... 52
description	Title of the event	-
event-description	Description of the event	max. 127 characters
owner	User to which the event is assigned	-
ownername	User name of the user	max. 127 characters
trap	Specifies whether an SNMP trap should be sent	-
notify	Name of the community to which the SNMP trap will be sent	max. 127 characters

Result

The event is configured.

Further notes

You delete an entry with the `no rmon event` command.

You display the RMON Event Table with the `show rmon events` command.

You show the details of the SNMP community with the `show snmp community` command.

11.3.2.6 no rmon event

Description

With this command, you delete an entry from the RMON event table.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no rmon event <number (1-52)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`number`	Number of the event entry to be deleted	1 ... 52

Result

The entry is deleted from the RMON event table.

11.3.3 Commands in the interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In the Global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

11.3.3.1 rmon collection stats

Description

With this command, you start the recording of statistical data of an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
rmon collection stats <index (1-52)>[owner<ownername(127)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
index	Number of the recording	1 ... 52
owner	User to which the event is assigned	-
ownername	User name of the user	max. 127 characters

Result

The recording of statistical data is started.

Further notes

You can display the content of a recording with the `show rmon statistics` command.

11.3.3.2 no rmon collection stats

Description

With this command, you end the recording of statistical data of an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no rmon collection stats <index (1-52)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
index	Number of the recording	1 ... 52

Result

The recording of statistical data is ended.

11.3.3.3 rmon collection history

Description

With this command, you configure the collection of statistical data of the interface in a selectable number of recording intervals ("Buckets ") with a specified period.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
rmon collection history<index(1-52)>
    [buckets<bucket-number(1-65535)>]
    [interval<seconds(1-3600)>]
    [owner<ownername(127)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`index`	Number of the recording	1 ... 65535
`buckets`	Maximum number of recording intervals	-
`bucket-number`	Number of recording intervals	1 ... 65535 Default: 50
`interval`	Duration of an individual recording interval	-
`seconds`	Time in seconds	1 ... 3600 Default: 1800
`owner`	User to which the event is assigned	-
`ownername`	User name of the user	max. 127 characters Default: monitor

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the default values are used.

Result

The data is recorded.

Further notes

You can display the content of a recording with the `show rmon history` command.

11.3.3.4 no rmon collection history

Description

With this command, you end the recording of statistical data of the interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no rmon collection history <index(1-52)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`index`	Number of the recording	1 ... 52

Result

The data recording is ended.

11.4 Port Mirroring

Note

It cannot be guaranteed when mirroring the data traffic that all packets are mirrored.

With the port mirroring function, you copy the data stream of one or more ports to another interface to be able to analyze this data stream without disturbing operation.

Note

You need to disable port mirroring if you want to connect a normal end device to the monitor port.

Note the data rate

If the maximum data rate of the mirrored port is higher than that of the monitor port, data may be lost and the monitor port no longer reflects the data traffic at the mirrored port. Several ports can be mirrored to one monitor port at the same time.

Several source ports from the same VLAN

If in a VLAN you select more than one source port for the port-based egress mirroring, unknown unicast and multicast frames as well as broadcast frames are forwarded only once to the destination port.

11.4.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

11.4.1.1   show monitor

Description

This command shows the status of the port mirroring function.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show monitor`

Result

The status of the port mirroring function is displayed.

11.4.1.2   show monitor barrier

Description

This command shows the status of the communication via the monitor port. If you enable this option, management of the switch via the monitor port is no longer reachable.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

`show monitor barrier`

Result

The settings are displayed.

11.4.1.3 show monitor session

Description

This command shows the settings used for mirroring ports.

You obtain information about the ports from which incoming and/or outgoing data traffic is mirrored and the port at which the mirrored data is output.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show monitor {session <session-id(1-1)>}`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`session`	Keyword for a session whose settings are displayed	-
`session-id`	Number of the session	1

Result

The settings for mirroring ports are displayed.

11.4.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

11.4.2.1 monitor

Description

With this command, you enable the port mirroring function.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
monitor
```

As default the function is "disabled".

Result

The port mirroring function is enabled.

Further notes

You can display the status of this function with the `show monitor` command.

You disable the function with the `no monitor` command.

11.4.2.2 no monitor

Description

With this command, you disable the port mirroring function.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no monitor
```

Result

The port mirroring function is disabled.

Further notes

You can display the status of this function with the `show monitor`command.

You enable the function with the `monitor` command.

11.4.2.3 monitor barrier enabled

Description

With this command, you disable the communication via the monitor port.

Note

Effects of monitor barrier enabled

If you enable this option, management of the switch via the monitor port is no longer reachable. The following port-specific functions are changed:

- DCP forwarding is turned off
- LLDP is turned off
- Unicast, multicast and broadcast blocking is turned on

The previous statuses of these functions are no longer restored after disabling monitor barrier again. They are reset to the default values and may need to be reconfigured.

You can reconfigure these functions manually even if monitor barrier is turned on. The data traffic on the monitor port is also allowed again. If you do not require this, make sure that only the data traffic you want to monitor is forwarded to the interface.

If mirroring is disabled, the listed port-specific functions are reset to the default values. This reset takes place regardless of whether the functions were configured manually or automatically by enabling monitor barrier.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
monitor barrier enabled
```

Result

Communication via the monitor port is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the communication with the `no monitor barrier enabled` command.

You display the configuration settings with the `show monitor barrier` command.

11.4.2.4   no monitor barrier enabled

Description

With this command, you enable the communication via the monitor port.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`no monitor barrier enabled`

Result

Communication via the monitor port is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the communication with the `monitor barrier enabled` command.

You display the configuration settings with the `show monitor barrier` command.

11.4.2.5   monitor session destination

Description

With this command, you configure the destination for mirroring a port.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
monitor session <session-id(1-1)> destination
  {interface <interface-type><interface-id>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Values
session-id	Number of the session	1
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Note

Selecting the destination port

A port that is part of a port channel cannot be configured as the destination port for a monitor session.

Result

As soon as you have configured the settings for the port to be monitored and the destination port, the session is complete and active.

Note

If you change the settings for an existing session, all previous configurations of this session are lost.

Further notes

You delete the destination for mirroring a port with the `no monitor session ... destination` command.

You end and delete a session with the `no monitor session` command.

You display the configuration settings with the `show monitor session` command.

11.4.2.6   no monitor session destination

Description

With this command, you delete the destination for mirroring a port.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no monitor session <session-id(1-1)> destination
   {interface <interface-type><interface-id>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
session-id	Number of the session	1
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

The destination for the mirroring of a port is deleted.

Further notes

You configure the destination for mirroring a port with the `monitor session ... destination` command.

You end and delete a session with the `no monitor session` command.

You display the configuration settings with the `show monitor session` command.

11.4.2.7   monitor session source

Description

With this command, you configure the source for mirroring a port.

Requirement

- Monitoring is enabled.

- You are in the Global configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  ```
  cli(config)#
  ```

Syntax

Call up the command for the port to be monitored with the following parameter assignment:

```
monitor session <session-id(1-1)> source
  {interface {<interface-type> <interface-id> | port-channel <port-channel-id (1-8)>}
[{rx|tx|both}]}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
session-id	Number of the session	1
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
port-channel	Keyword for a port channel connection	-
port-channel-id	Number of the addressed port channel	1 ... 8
rx	Received data traffic will be mirrored (**r**eceived)	If you enable the mirroring function for a ring port, the ring port sends test frames even in the "link down" status.
tx	Transmitted data traffic will be mirrored (**t**ransmitted)	
both	Received and transmitted data traffic will be mirrored	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value (both) is used.

Result

As soon as you have configured the settings for the port to be monitored and the destination port, the session is complete and active.

Further notes

You delete the source for mirroring a port with the `no monitor session ... source` command.

You end and delete a session with the `no monitor session` command.

You display the configuration settings with the `show monitor session` command.

See also

      Features not supported (Page 26)

11.4.2.8   no monitor session source

Description

      With this command, you delete the source for mirroring a port or a VLAN.

Requirement

      You are in the Global configuration mode.

      The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

      Call up the command for the port to be monitored with the following parameter assignment:

```
no monitor session <session-id(1-1)> source
  {interface <interface-type><interface-id>} [{rx|tx|both}]}
```

      The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
session-id	Number of the session	1
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
rx	Received data traffic will be mirrored (received)	-
tx	Transmitted data traffic will be mirrored (transmitted)	-
both	Received and transmitted data traffic will be mirrored	-

      For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

      If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value (both) is used.

Result

      The source for the mirroring of a port is deleted.

Further notes

      You configure the source for mirroring a port with the `monitor session ... source` command.

You end and delete a session with the `no monitor session` command.

You display the configuration settings with the `show monitor session` command.

11.4.2.9 no monitor session

Description

With this command, you delete the monitor session.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no monitor session<session-id(1-1)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
session-id	Number of the session	1

Result

The monitor session is deleted.

Further notes

You display the configuration settings with the `show monitor session` command.

You configure and start mirroring of a port with the `monitor session` command.

11.5 Loop detection

With the "Loop detection" function, you specify the ports for which loop detection will be activated. The ports involved send special test frames - the loop detection frames. If these frames are sent back to the device, there is a loop.

A "Local loop" involving this device means that the frames are received again at a different port of the same device. If the sent frames are received again at the same port, there is a "remote loop" involving other network components.

With the commands in this section, you start loop detection and decide which actions will be used on the ports affected if loops are detected.

Note

A loop is an error in the network structure that needs to be eliminated. The loop detection can help to find the errors more quickly but does not eliminate them.

Note

Note that loop detection is only possible at ports that were not configured as ring ports or standby ports.

Note

Changing the configured port status with loop detection

The configuration of the port status can be changed with the "Loop Detection" function. If, for example, the administrator has disabled a port, the port can be enabled again after a device restart by "Loop Detection". The port status "link down" is not changed by "Loop Detection".

11.5.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

11.5.1.1 show loopd

Description

With this command, you display the information on loop detection.

Detected loops are shown.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`show loopd`

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

Result

Information on loop detection is displayed.

11.5.1.2   show loopd interface

Description

Displays information on the loop interface.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command without parameters or with the following parameter assignment:

```
show loopd interface [{<interface-type> <interface-id> | port-channel <port-channel-
id (1-8)>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`port-channel`	Keyword for a port channel connection	-
`port-channel-id`	Number of the addressed port channel	1 ... 8

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 31)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

The loop interface is displayed.

Further notes

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command.

11.5.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

11.5.2.1 loopd

Description

With this command, you enable the loop detection function.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
loopd
```

Result

The loop detection function is enabled

Further notes

You disable the function with the `no loopd` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command.

11.5.2.2 no loopd

Description

With this command, you disable the loop detection function.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no loopd
```

Result

The loop detection function is disabled

Further notes

You enable the function with the `loopd` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command.

11.5.2.3   loopd vlan mode

Description

With this command, you enable the loop detection function for VLAN.

Requirement

● Loopd is activated

● You are in the Global configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  ```
  cli(config)#
  ```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
loopd vlan mode
```

Result

The loop detection function is enabled for VLAN.

Further notes

You disable the function with the `no loopd vlan mode` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command

11.5.2.4   no loopd vlan mode

Description

With this command, you disable the loop detection function for VLAN.

Requirement

- Loopd is activated
- You are in the Global configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`no loopd vlan mode`

Result

The loop detection function is disabled for VLAN.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `loopd vlan mode` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command

11.5.3   Commands in the Interface Configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In the Global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

● If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.

● If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

11.5.3.1 loopd {blocked | forwarder | sender}

Description

With this command you specify how the port handles loop detection frames.

Requirement

● Loop detection is enabled

● A Spanning Tree port, ring port or standby port cannot be the sender port.

● You are in the Interface configuration mode.
The command prompt is:
`cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`loopd {blocked | forwarder | sender}`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
blocked	The forwarding of loop detection frames is blocked.	-
forwarder	Loop detection frames from other devices are forwarded.	Default after enabling loop detection.
sender	Loop detection frames are sent out and forwarded.	-

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

It has been configured how the port handles loop detection frames.

Further notes

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command.

11.5.3.2 loopd {tx-interval | detect-threshold | reaction-timeout}

Description

With this command you configure the send interval, threshold value and reaction time for loop detection.

Requirement

- Loop detection is enabled
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  ```
  cli(config-if-$$$)#
  ```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
loopd {tx-interval <mSec(500-5000)> | detect-threshold <integer(1-500)> | reaction-
timeout <seconds(0-86400)>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
tx-interval	Keyword for the send interval	-
mSec	Specifies the send interval for loop detection frames in milliseconds.	500 ... 5000 Default: 1000
detect-threshold	Keyword for the threshold value	-
integer	Specifies the threshold value after how many received loop detection frames, a loop is assumed and the device reacts according to the setting.	1 ... 500 Default: 2
reaction-timeout	Keyword for the time to the end of the reaction time	-
seconds	Specifies the number of seconds after which the device automatically changes to the status in which it was before the loop.	0 ... 86400 Default: 0 If you set the value "0", you need to enable the port manually again following a loop using the command loopd port reset.

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used. The default values apply only to a port enabled earlier with `loopd sender`.

Result

The settings are suitably configured.

Further notes

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command.

11.5.3.3 loopd port reset

Description

With this command, you enable a port that was blocked by loop detection.

Requirement

● Loop detection is enabled

● You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`loopd port reset`

Result

The blocked port is enabled again.

Further notes

You disable the setting with the `no loopd port reset` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command.

See also

Addresses and interface names (Page 31)

11.5.3.4 no loopd port reset

Description

With this command, you disable the port reset for loop detection.

Requirement

- Loop detection is enabled

- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`no loopd port reset`

Result

The port reset function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the setting with the `loopd port reset` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command.

See also

Addresses and interface names (Page 31)

11.5.3.5   loopd reaction local

Description

With this command, you activate the "disable" reaction for a local loop. If a local loop is detected, the port is blocked.

Requirement

- Loop detection is enabled.

- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`loopd reaction local`

Result

"disable" is activated for the `loopd reaction local` function.

"disable" is the default after enabling loop detection.

Further notes

You enable the "no action" reaction with the `no loopd reaction local` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command.

See also

Addresses and interface names (Page 31)

11.5.3.6 no loopd reaction local

Description

With this command, you enable the "no action" reaction for a local loop. If a local loop is detected, this has no effect on the port.

Requirement

- Loop detection is enabled.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`no loopd reaction local`

Result

"no action" is activated for the `loopd reaction local` function.

"disable" is the default after enabling loop detection.

Further notes

You enable the "disable" reaction with the `loopd reaction local` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the show loopd command.

See also

Addresses and interface names (Page 31)

11.5.3.7 loopd reaction remote

Description

With this command, you enable the "disable" reaction for a remote loop. If a remote loop is detected, the port is blocked.

Requirement

- Loop detection is enabled.

- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:
`loopd reaction remote`

Result

"disable" is activated for the `loopd reaction remote` function.

"disable" is the default after enabling loop detection.

Further notes

You enable the "no action" reaction with the `no loopd reaction remote` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command.

See also

Addresses and interface names (Page 31)

11.5.3.8 no loopd reaction remote

Description

With this command, you enable the "no action" reaction for a remote loop. If a remote loop is detected, this has no effect on the port.

Requirement

- loopd is enabled

- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:
`no loopd reaction remote`

Result

"no action" is activated for the `loop reaction remote` function.

"disable" is the default after enabling loop detection.

Further notes

You enable the "disable" setting with the `loopd reaction remote` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command.

See also

Addresses and interface names (Page 31)

Index